

B1EUH01  
(영어 I 미국) 표준4세대

# GENESIS G80



B1MS7-B5007

CAR MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM I USER'S MANUAL



GENESIS

Thank you for purchasing this multimedia system.

This user's manual explains how to use the GENESIS Motors multimedia system. Before using the product, read the contents of this user's manual carefully and use this product safely.

- The screens shown in this manual may differ with the actual screens of the product.
- The design and specification of this product may change without prior notification for product improvement.
- When transferring the vehicle to another individual, include this user's manual so that the next driver can continue its use.

---

### Precaution for safe usage

---

- Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.
- Do not operate the multimedia system while driving.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the multimedia system.
- Do not watch the screen for prolonged periods of time while driving.
- Set the volume to a level which allows the driver to be aware of external conditions.

- Do not operate the multimedia system for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle ignition in ACC. Such operations may lead to battery discharge.
- Be cautious not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device.
- Do not cause severe shock to the device. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch panel.
- In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or service center.
- When cleaning the touch screen, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, ammonia, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color and quality deterioration.

- SiriusXM service requires a subscription, sold separately, after 3-month trial included with vehicle purchase. If you decide to continue your SiriusXM service at the end of your trial subscription, the plan you choose will automatically renew and bill at then-current rates until you call Sirius XM at 1-866-635-2349 to cancel. See our Customer Agreement for complete terms at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com). Programming subject to change. Sirius satellite service is available only to those at least 18 and older in the 48 contiguous USA, D.C., and PR (with coverage limitations). Traffic information not available in all markets. See [siriusxm.com/traffic](http://siriusxm.com/traffic) for details. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.

### WARNING

---

- Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

## Read the following safety cautions for your safety

**Before using the product, read the contents of this user's manual carefully and use this product safely.**

- ※ The design and specifications of this product may change without prior notification for product and service improvement.  
The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustrations.  
For more accurate information about the vehicle, please refer to the catalogue.
- ※ For more information on open licenses and legal notices, refer to the website below.  
[http://www.mobiszone.co.kr/front/mall/jsp/manual/avn\\_download\\_center\\_manual.jsp](http://www.mobiszone.co.kr/front/mall/jsp/manual/avn_download_center_manual.jsp)

## Notations used within this User's Manual

### **WARNING**

---

- Failure to observe the instructions within this category could result in death or serious injury or damage to the vehicle.
- 

### **CAUTION**

---

- Information on matters that could potentially lead to injury or vehicle damage/malfunction Information that could lead to higher user safety
- 

### **Information**

---

- Information and tips that provide additional user convenience in using the product
- 

### **NOTICE**

---

- Information on specific features that facilitate proper product use and functional understanding
  - Information on terminology used within this manual
-

## GENESIS Brand VEHICLE OWNER PRIVACY POLICY

Your GENESIS Brand vehicle may be equipped with technologies and services that use information collected, generated, recorded or stored by the vehicle. GENESIS Brand has created a Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy to explain how these technologies and services collect use and share this information.

You may read our Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy on the Hyundaiusa.com website at:

<https://www.hyundaiusa.com/owner-privacy-policy.aspx>

If you would like to receive a hard copy of our Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy, please contact our Customer Connect Center at:

Genesis Motors USA/Phoenix  
P.O. Box 83835  
Phoenix, AZ 85071-3835  
877-378-8727  
[consumeraffairs@hmausa.com](mailto:consumeraffairs@hmausa.com)

GENESIS Brand's Customer Connect Center representatives are available Monday through Friday, between the hours of 5:00 AM and 7:00 PM PST and Saturday and Sunday between 6:30 AM and 3:00 PM PST (English).

For Customer Connect Center assistance in Spanish or Korean, representatives are available Monday through Friday between 6:30 AM and 3:00 PM PST.

# Table of Contents

## 1. Basic

|                                                       |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Warnings and Cautions .....                           | 1-2  |
| Key Product Features .....                            | 1-4  |
| Component Names and Functions .....                   | 1-5  |
| Head Unit .....                                       | 1-5  |
| Steering Wheel Control .....                          | 1-7  |
| Starting the System for the<br>First Time .....       | 1-9  |
| Turning the System On/Off .....                       | 1-9  |
| System Reset .....                                    | 1-9  |
| Battery Warning Message .....                         | 1-10 |
| Restrictions on Features for Safety<br>Measures ..... | 1-10 |
| Home Screen .....                                     | 1-11 |
| On-Screen Touch Controls .....                        | 1-12 |

## 2. AV

|                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| FM/AM .....                                       | 2-2  |
| HD Radio™ Technology .....                        | 2-4  |
| HD Radio™ Mode Display Controls ...               | 2-5  |
| SiriusXM™ .....                                   | 2-6  |
| Selecting through Channel/<br>Category List ..... | 2-8  |
| Direct Tune .....                                 | 2-8  |
| Viewing Menu .....                                | 2-8  |
| Disc .....                                        | 2-11 |
| Precautions upon Handling Discs .....             | 2-11 |
| Supported Disc Formats .....                      | 2-12 |
| Disc/Content Format Compatibility .....           | 2-12 |
| Before Playing an MP3 Disc .....                  | 2-14 |
| Disc CD .....                                     | 2-16 |
| Disc MP3 .....                                    | 2-19 |

|                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------|------|
| USB .....                                    | 2-22 |
| Before Playing a USB MP3 .....               | 2-22 |
| USB MP3 Information and<br>Precautions ..... | 2-24 |
| Supported Image Specifications .....         | 2-24 |
| USB Music .....                              | 2-25 |
| USB Image .....                              | 2-28 |
| iPod .....                                   | 2-30 |
| Using iPod Devices .....                     | 2-30 |
| iPod .....                                   | 2-34 |
| AUX .....                                    | 2-37 |
| Connecting an External Device .....          | 2-37 |
| Bluetooth® Audio .....                       | 2-38 |
| Bluetooth Connections Settings .....         | 2-39 |
| My Music .....                               | 2-40 |

## 3. Bluetooth

### Before Using the Bluetooth®

#### Handsfree ..... 3-2

What is *Bluetooth*® Wireless  
Technology? ..... 3-2

Precautions for Safe Driving ..... 3-2

CAUTIONS upon Connecting  
Bluetooth® Phone ..... 3-3

#### Bluetooth Connection..... 3-4

Pairing a New Device ..... 3-4

Connecting Bluetooth Devices ..... 3-4

Disconnecting Bluetooth Devices ..... 3-5

Deleting Bluetooth Devices ..... 3-5

#### Bluetooth Phone ..... 3-6

Phone Status Icons ..... 3-6

Dial ..... 3-7

Accept/Reject Call ..... 3-7

Using the Menu During a Phone Call... 3-8

Call History ..... 3-9

Contacts ..... 3-10

Favorites ..... 3-11

## 4. Blue Link® Control

### Name and Function of Each Part..... 4-2

Rear View Mirror Switch ..... 4-2

#### Before Use..... 4-3

What Is Blue Link? ..... 4-3

What Is Telematics? ..... 4-3

About Transmission and Reception of  
Radio Waves ..... 4-3

#### Getting Started with Blue Link ..... 4-4

Connecting with the Blue Link Center ... 4-4

Blue Link® Safety and Security Service... 4-5

Stolen Vehicle Recovery ..... 4-5

#### Driving Info ..... 4-6

#### Send to Car with Google ..... 4-6

#### Vehicle Diagnostics ..... 4-7

#### Blue Link Settings ..... 4-7

#### Blue Link Voice Local Search ..... 4-8

What is Blue Link Voice Local Search?... 4-8

Starting Blue Link Voice Local Search ... 4-8

## 5. Navigation

### Basic Features ..... 5-2

Operating Navigation Screen ..... 5-2

Places ..... 5-3

Changing Map View ..... 5-3

Navigation Volume ..... 5-3

Zoom In/Zoom Out ..... 5-4

Map Scale ..... 5-4

#### Menu..... 5-5

Route ..... 5-5

Map Display ..... 5-6

Nearby POIs ..... 5-7

Traffic ..... 5-10

Save ..... 5-14

#### Search..... 5-15

Places ..... 5-15

Address ..... 5-16

Previous Destinations ..... 5-17

Local Search ..... 5-18

POI Categories ..... 5-19

Gas Stations ..... 5-20

Restaurants ..... 5-20

Emergency ..... 5-20

|                                 |             |
|---------------------------------|-------------|
| Address Book .....              | 5-21        |
| Phone Number .....              | 5-22        |
| Freeway Exit/Entrance .....     | 5-23        |
| Intersection .....              | 5-23        |
| Coordinates .....               | 5-24        |
| Favorite places.....            | 5-25        |
| Route Setting .....             | 5-26        |
| Route Guidance .....            | 5-29        |
| <b>Route.....</b>               | <b>5-31</b> |
| Canceling Route .....           | 5-31        |
| Display Route Information ..... | 5-31        |
| Route Overview .....            | 5-32        |
| Route Preview .....             | 5-32        |
| Editing Route .....             | 5-33        |
| Route Options .....             | 5-34        |
| Avoid Street .....              | 5-34        |
| <b>Navigation Settings.....</b> | <b>5-35</b> |
| General .....                   | 5-35        |
| Display .....                   | 5-36        |
| Guidance .....                  | 5-36        |
| Route .....                     | 5-37        |
| Traffic .....                   | 5-37        |
| <b>Troubleshooting.....</b>     | <b>5-38</b> |

## 6. Voice Recognition

### What is Voice Recognition? .....

### Precautions Required for Successful Voice Recognition .....

### Starting/Ending and Setting Voice Recognition .....

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Starting Voice Recognition .....                          | 6-3 |
| Ending Voice Recognition .....                            | 6-3 |
| Combining Voice Recognition with On-Screen Commands ..... | 6-3 |
| Extending the Listening Time .....                        | 6-4 |
| Skipping Prompt Messages .....                            | 6-5 |
| Adjusting Voice Recognition Volume ...                    | 6-5 |

### Voice Recognition Screen Overview ..

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Help Display .....                             | 6-6 |
| Instructions for Using Voice Recognition ..... | 6-7 |

### Voice Commands .....

|                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| Types of Commands .....   | 6-8  |
| Call Commands .....       | 6-8  |
| Navigation Commands ..... | 6-9  |
| Radio Commands .....      | 6-11 |
| Media Commands .....      | 6-12 |

|                                                        |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Other Commands List (Commands used in List/Help) ..... | 6-14 |
| "Find <Category>" List.....                            | 6-15 |

### Siri Eyes Free .....

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| How to start Siri ..... | 6-21 |
| How to use Siri.....    | 6-21 |

## 7. Info

### Download Center .....

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| App List ..... | 7-2 |
| My Apps .....  | 7-3 |

### SiriusXM™ Data .....

|                                        |      |
|----------------------------------------|------|
| About SiriusXM™ Data Service.....      | 7-4  |
| Accessing SiriusXM™ Data .....         | 7-4  |
| SiriusXM™ Weather Announcement...      | 7-4  |
| SiriusXM™ Traffic Information.....     | 7-5  |
| SiriusXM™ Fuel Price Information ..... | 7-6  |
| SiriusXM™ Stock Information.....       | 7-7  |
| SiriusXM™ Sports Information .....     | 7-8  |
| SiriusXM™ Movie Information .....      | 7-10 |

## 8. Other Features

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Climate Mode .....           | 8-2 |
| Operating Climate Mode ..... | 8-2 |
| Basic Mode Screen .....      | 8-2 |
| Climate Setting Screen ..... | 8-4 |
| Camera.....                  | 8-5 |
| Steering-linked camera ..... | 8-5 |

## 9. Setup

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Setup .....                         | 9-2 |
| Navigation Settings.....            | 9-2 |
| Sound Settings.....                 | 9-2 |
| Display Settings .....              | 9-3 |
| Bluetooth Settings .....            | 9-4 |
| Bluetooth Connection Settings ..... | 9-4 |
| Auto Connection Priority .....      | 9-5 |
| Phone Ringtone .....                | 9-5 |
| Bluetooth System Information.....   | 9-6 |

|                                  |      |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Blue Link Settings .....         | 9-7  |
| Service Activation .....         | 9-7  |
| Modem Information .....          | 9-7  |
| Voice Recognition Settings ..... | 9-8  |
| Clock Settings .....             | 9-8  |
| Wi-Fi Settings .....             | 9-8  |
| Wi-Fi Settings Screen .....      | 9-8  |
| How to Connect to a Network..... | 9-9  |
| Language Settings .....          | 9-9  |
| Keyboard Settings.....           | 9-9  |
| Blue Link Apps Settings.....     | 9-10 |
| Screen Saver Settings.....       | 9-10 |
| Phone Projection Settings .....  | 9-10 |
| Advanced Settings .....          | 9-11 |
| System Info.....                 | 9-11 |
| System Update .....              | 9-11 |

## 10. Appendix

|                                                                                  |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Product Specification .....                                                      | 10-2 |
| Troubleshooting.....                                                             | 10-4 |
| FAQ .....                                                                        | 10-7 |
| About Pairing Mobile Phones .....                                                | 10-7 |
| About Making/<br>Answering Phone Calls .....                                     | 10-8 |
| About <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Wireless Technology/<br>Head Unit Use Environment ..... | 10-8 |



## CAUTIONS upon Using SD Cards

### • Ejecting and Inserting SD Cards

- Ejecting and inserting SD cards while the multimedia system is operating may result in SD Card or System errors. To eject or insert the SD card, first turn off the multimedia system and the vehicle ignition.
- Eject/insert SD cards only to update the multimedia system with a new version.

### • Usage of SD Cards

- The SD Card is formatted to include only Map and new system update files.
- The SD Card cannot be used to save and play Music.
- Do not add, delete, or format files within the SD Card.

---

## iPod®

---

iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.

---

## ***Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology**

---

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by GENESIS Brand is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

A *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology. *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology phone compatibility can be checked by visiting [owners.genesis.com](http://owners.genesis.com).

---

## **HD Radio™ Technology**

---

HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents.

HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and “Arc” logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

---

## **Wi-Fi®**

---

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ Logo is a certification mark of Wi-Fi Alliance.



# 01

## part.1 Basic

Warnings and Cautions

Key Product Features

Component Names and Functions

Starting the System for the First Time

# Basic

## Safety Warnings

- Even when receiving route guidance from the Navigation system, please abide by actual traffic and road regulations. Following only the Navigation route guidance may lead to violations of actual traffic and road regulations and lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not stare at the screen while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.
- Do not operate the Navigation system while driving, such as entering POIs or conducting route searches. Such acts could lead to accidents, fire, or electric shock. Park the vehicle before operating the device.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the Multimedia system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.
- Heed caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.
- If you use phone related functions while driving, you will find it difficult to concentrate on operating the vehicle and the current traffic conditions, so the possibility of an accident may increase. Please use phone related functions only when parked.
- Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.
- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightening as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
- Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.
- For most Audio and multimedia modes, the display will not operate when the vehicle is in motion. For your safety, first park the vehicle to watch or view the screen. (The screen will only operate when the parking brake is ON for manual transmission vehicles and when the parking brake is ON or the gearshift is in the P (PARK) position for automatic.)
- Some functions other than the one mentioned above cannot be used while driving. These functions operate only when the vehicle is parked.

## Safety Cautions

Pay attention to traffic conditions while driving.

- In some instances, the navigation may provide guidance through restricted areas.
- Operating the device while driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device. In addition, the touch screen may not work for some functions when the vehicle is in motion. The touch screen feature will be supported once the vehicle has stopped.
- Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.

- Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable levels before turning off the device.)
- If you want to change the position of device installation, please inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center. Technical expertise is required to install or disassemble the device.
- Turn on the car ignition before using this device. Do not operate the Multimedia system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.
- Upon using the Multimedia system for more than 10 minutes with the car engine turned off, the following warning will be displayed. After 10 minutes, the warning will be displayed for 5 seconds every 1 minute.

- Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.
- When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color/quality deterioration. When experiencing product concerns, inquire with your place of purchase or service maintenance center.
- Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.

# Key Product Features

This device is a Multimedia system equipped with a multifunctional disc player that supports Radio (FM, AM), HD Radio™ Technology, SiriusXM™, Audio CD, MP3, USB, iPod, AUX, Bluetooth Audio and My Music features. The WIDE VGA LCD provides a high quality resolution while the powerful and rich sound system adds to the driving enjoyment.

|         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display | Wide TFT-LCD Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Provides high quality video through a Wide TFT-LCD Display using an LED Back Light.</li><li>Touch screen for maximum user convenience.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Radio   | Digital Tuner Feature <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Digital Tuner using PLL method that supports memory of 12 broadcast stations for each AM and FM modes.</li></ul> Radio broadcast station name <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Displays broadcast station names.</li></ul> HD Radio™/Satellite Radio feature <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Supports HD Radio™ reception and Satellite Radio (SiriusXM™).</li></ul> |

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Multimedia Player | Support for various Media Formats <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Support for various media formats, including Radio, Audio CD, MP3, USB, iPod, AUX and Bluetooth® Audio Streaming modes</li></ul> My Music <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Supports copying of music stored within USB devices into My Music (internal memory) mode</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                     |
| Navigation        | Voice Guidance <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Voice route guidance to safely and conveniently reach set destinations</li><li>Various map scales that enable drivers to accurately view map and surrounding areas</li></ul> Automatic Correction for Current Location <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Automatically corrects current position using map matching and GPS information.</li></ul>                                                                                                    |
| Miscellaneous     | Bluetooth® Wireless Technology <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Convenient use of Bluetooth® Handsfree by using buttons within the steering wheel control</li></ul> Digital Screen Control Features <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Easy control of features through touch screen options</li></ul> Steering Wheel Control <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Control over audio features, voice recognition and Bluetooth® through the steering wheel control for maximum convenience</li></ul> |

# Component Names and Functions

## Head Unit



| Name |             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | PWR/<br>VOL | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When power is off, press to turn power on</li><li>• When power is on, press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) to turn power off</li><li>• When power is on, press quickly (under 0.8 seconds) to turn Audio off</li><li>• Turn left/right to control volume</li></ul> |
| 2    |             | Press to insert or eject disc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 3    | RESET       | Resets the system settings. (Preset radio channels and other data will not be deleted)                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4    |             | Displays the Setup mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Name |       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5    | TUNE  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FM/AM mode : changes the frequency</li><li>• SiriusXM™ mode : changes the channel</li><li>• MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode : changes the track, file or title changes the track, file or title (except USB Image, Bluetooth Audio and AUX)</li></ul> |
| 6    | RADIO | <p>Converts to FM/AM/SiriusXM™ mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM → AM → SiriusXM™ → FM</li></ul>                                                                                                                  |



| Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>7</b> MEDIA       | Converts to MEDIA mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the media is not connected or the CD player is not available for this model, MEDIA mode will not be activated.</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> BLUELINK    | Displays the Blue Link mode                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>9</b> MAP   VOICE | Displays the map for the current position                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>10</b> NAVI       | Takes you to the menu screen where you can find your destination and set the route.                                                                                                        |

※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

| Name                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>11</b> <b>SEEK</b><br><b>TRACK</b> | <p>When key is pressed shortly. (under 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: plays previous/next frequency</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: plays the previous/next channel</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: changes the track, file or title (except USB Image and AUX)</li> </ul> <p>When key is pressed and held. (over 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: continuously changes the frequency until the key is released</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: continuously changes the channel until the key is released and plays the current channel</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: rewinds or fastforwards the track or file (except USB Image, Bluetooth Audio and AUX)</li> </ul> |
| <b>12</b> SD MAP                      | SD card insert slot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>13</b> PHONE                       | Takes user to phone screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>14</b> INFO                        | Displays the information mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

# Steering Wheel Control



| Name |              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | VOL+<br>VOL- | Controls the volume                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 2    | MODE         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time this key is pressed, mode is changed in the order FM → AM → SiriusXM™ → Disc → USB Music or iPod → AUX → Bluetooth Audio → My Music</li> <li>If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled</li> <li>Press and hold the key (more than 0.8 seconds) to turn the Audio system on/off</li> <li>When power is off, press the key to turn power back on</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 3    | ↕            | <p>When keys are pressed quickly. (less than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode : searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: searches broadcast channels saved to Presets</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: changes the track, file or title (except USB Image, AUX)</li> </ul> <p>When keys are pressed and held. (more than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: automatically searches broadcast frequencies</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: automatically searches broadcast channels</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: quickly looks up songs (excluding USB images, AUX and Bluetooth audio files)</li> </ul> |



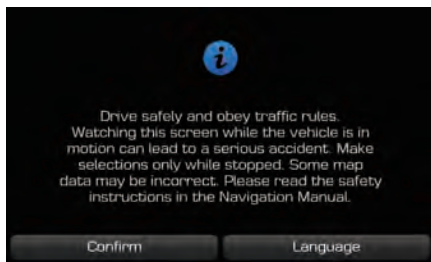
| Name |                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4    |  | <p>When pressed quickly. (less than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activates voice recognition</li> </ul> <p>When pressed and held. (more than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ends voice recognition</li> <li>• Activates Siri Eyes Free</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 5    |  | <p>When pressed quickly. (less than 1.2 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call</li> <li>• When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call</li> <li>• When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting)</li> </ul> <p>When pressed and held. (more than 1.2 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When pressed in Bluetooth® Hands-free, redials the last call</li> <li>• When pressed during a Bluetooth® Hands-free call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private)</li> <li>• When pressed while calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to Bluetooth® Hands-free (operates only when Bluetooth® Hands-free is connected)</li> </ul> |
| 6    |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When pressed during a call, ends the phone call</li> <li>• When pressed in the incoming call screen, rejects the call</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

# Starting the System for the First Time

## Turning the System On/Off

Press the engine start button or set the ignition key to On or ACC. Each time you turn on the system, a boot logo and safety warning will appear.



Pressing the power key on the head unit will display the user confirm screen. To change the system language between English, French, Spanish and Korean select the Change **Language** button.

## NOTICE

- Cannot operate the system while it is booting up. It may take some time for all of features of the system, particularly the voice recognition system, to be ready for use.

Pressing and holding the power key on the head unit will turn off the system.

## i Information

- If you turn off the system during a phone call using the Hands-free feature, then the call will automatically switch to your mobile phone.

## NOTICE

- Check the volume when turning on the system. Before turning on the system, adjust the volume to a reasonable level.

## System Reset



The System Reset function restores the system when it is not operating correctly. Press and hold the RESET key for a second or longer. (It is recommended that you press the RESET key using a tool, such as a pin or a clip.)

## NOTICE

- Resetting the system restores all existing settings and configurations (e.g. volume, display, etc.) back to their factory defaults.

---

## Battery Warning Message

Always use the system while the car engine is running. If you turn on the system while the engine is off, a battery warning message will appear. When the engine starts, the message will disappear.



---

## NOTICE

- If you use the system for a long time with the engine off, the battery may become completely discharged.
- 

---

## Restrictions on Features for Safety Measures

The restriction screen will disappear when shifting gears into P.

---

### ⚠ WARNING

#### - Blank Screen

- Refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock).
- 

---

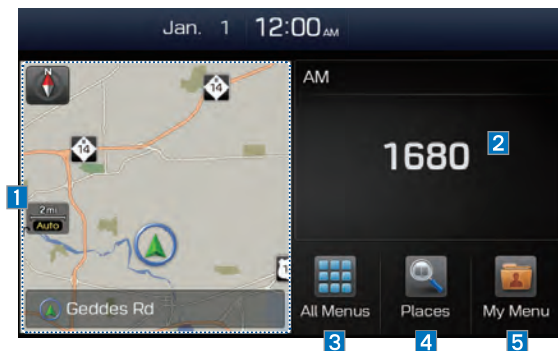
### ⚠ WARNING

#### - Touching the Antenna During A Thunder Storm

- Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightning as such acts may lead to lightning induced electric shock.
-

## Home Screen

### Controls Menu Configuration for the Home Screen



| Features                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Navigation Widget | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides a brief view of the navigation map and the route screen.</li> <li>Touch any area on the screen to move to the navigation screen.</li> </ul> |
| <b>2</b> AV Widget         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shows brief information on the radio media current playing.</li> <li>Touch the area to move to the mode for what you are listening to.</li> </ul>    |
| <b>3</b> All Menus         | Shows all of the items in the system menu.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>4</b> Places            | Directly moves to the screen where you can search for your destination.                                                                                                                     |
| <b>5</b> My Menu           | Add your favorite menu items to have quick and easy access to them.                                                                                                                         |

## Information Display on the Status Bar

Displays the date and time, along with the system status shown by the various icons to the right of the clock.

The icons in the following table indicate the various types of system status details and events.

|             | AV-Mute       | Navigation-Mute       | Making a call and Bluetooth connection |                                 |                                               | 2G/3G/Wi-Fi                                                                   |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ICON        |               |                       |                                        |                                 |                                               |                                                                               |
| Description | Mute AV sound | Mute Navigation sound | Bluetooth phone remaining battery      | Handsfree connection            | Making a call using Bluetooth phone           | Bluetooth phone reception sensitivity                                         |
| ICON        |               |                       |                                        |                                 |                                               |                                                                               |
| Description |               |                       | Connecting to music stream             |                                 | Blue Link received signal strength indication | Connecting to Wi-Fi                                                           |
| ICON        |               |                       |                                        |                                 |                                               |                                                                               |
| Description |               |                       | Handsfree+ streaming connection        | Mute Bluetooth phone microphone |                                               | 2G/3G data connection (displayed only when connected to a 2G/3G data network) |
| ICON        |               |                       |                                        |                                 |                                               |                                                                               |
| Description |               |                       | Downloading contacts/recent calls      |                                 |                                               | LTE data connection (displayed only when connected to a LTE data network)     |

### Information

- Received signal strength indicator of Blue Link and 2G/3G/Wi-Fi/LTE information are displayed only in the devices that support the telematics system.

## Adding Your Favorite Menu Items to My Menu

From the Home screen, select **My Menu** ► and then **Edit** .

From the Edit My Menu screen, select menu items from the list on the right, then drag and drop them to a desired place on the left.

To remove the item from My Menu, draft item from the left and drop them on the right.



### **i** Information

- Up to eight items can be added to My Menu.

## On-Screen Touch Controls

Learn how to touch the screen to operate the system.

### Select

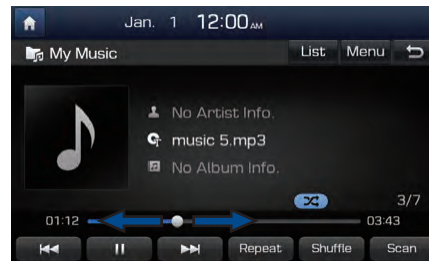
Tap lightly on a menu or an item to select it.

### NOTICE

- The system will not recognize your touch if you wear a glove or other non-conductive material. Touch the screen using your finger, an electrostatic touch-screen glove, or a stylus pen.

## Drag & Drop

Select a menu or item you want, then drag and drop it to where you want to place it.

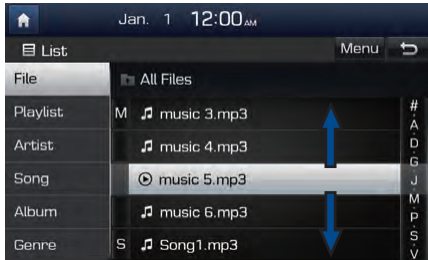


Drag or touch the slider along the play bar in the music screens to jump to the point that you want to play from. However, the CD player does not support drag function.

### **i** Information

- Music screens for Disc CD and Disc MP3 do not support this function.

## Flick (Quick Scrolling)



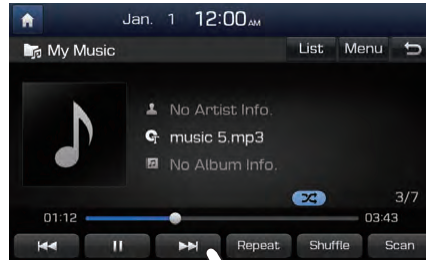
Quickly moves up and down in the list.

### NOTICE

- Moving the list when there are many items will display a handler on the right of the display. You can easily move many items at a time with the handler

## Press and Hold

Selecting the  and  buttons in the music player will fast forward/rewind the music.



MEMO

# 02

## part.2 AV

FM/AM

HD Radio™ Technology

SiriusXM™

Disc

USB

iPod

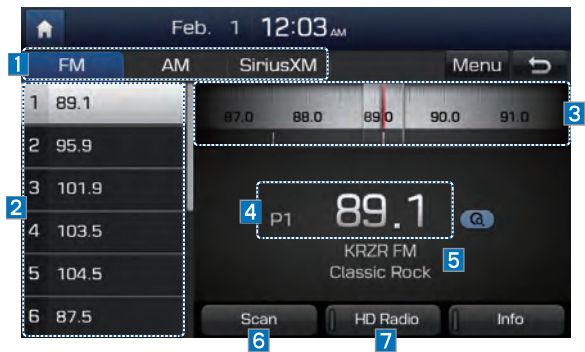
AUX

Bluetooth® Audio

My Music

FM/AM

You can access the radio player either by pressing the **RADIO** hard key or by selecting the Radio menu option from All Menus on the Home screen.



**i** Information

- If you press the **RADIO** hard key when the power is off, then the power will turn on and a radio broadcast will be tuned up.
- If you are in the FM/AM mode, select the FM/AM radio widget from the Home screen to access the radio player.

| Features                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode Display      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Displays current operating mode</li><li>• If select wanted mode tap, it will change to selected mode in Radio</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>2</b> Preset            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shows saved presets for user selection</li><li>• After selecting frequency → press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the preset button. A 'beep' will sound and the frequency is saved to the selected preset button.</li></ul> <p><b>i</b> A total of 24 frequencies with 12 preset frequencies each for FM/AM modes can be saved.</p> |
| <b>3</b> Frequency Bar     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flick the frequency bar left/right to search for available radio channels to the left or right of the current channel</li><li>• Dragging: drag the frequency bar to the left/right to find the radio channel that you want</li></ul>                                                                                              |
| <b>4</b> Frequency         | Displays the current frequency                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>5</b> Broadcast station | Displays the current broadcast station name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>6</b> Scan              | Plays frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>7</b> HD Radio          | When the HD Radio soft button is ON (the blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio signals will be received                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |



| Features      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>8</b> Info | <p>Turns the Radio Text information on and off</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the ON Text On button is displayed (Text off state), information will not be displayed even if there is information being transmitted from the broadcast station</li> <li>If the Off Text Off button is displayed (Text on state), then broadcast information will be displayed. Information may not be displayed if there is no information being transmitted from the broadcast station</li> </ul> |

| Features                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>9</b> Menu                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Autostore: Saves frequencies with good reception to Preset buttons</li> <li><b>i</b> While Auto Store is operating, pressing the Auto Store button again will cancel the function and play the previous frequency.</li> <li>Preset Scan: Plays preset frequencies for 5 or 10 seconds each <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HD on: 10 seconds</li> <li>HD off: 5 seconds</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| <b>10</b> Scan/Auto Scan/Preset Scan | Displays an activated mode from the Scan/Auto Scan/Preset Scan modes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>11</b> SEEK/TRACK                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button briefly (less than 0.8 seconds): seeks the previous/next frequency</li> <li>Pressing and holding this button (longer than 0.8 seconds): moves quickly through all of the frequencies. From the moment that you release the button, the system will seek the next available frequency</li> </ul>                                                                                  |
| <b>12</b> TUNE                       | <p>Turn the  TUNE knob to manually seek available frequencies</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM: Increment/decrement by 200 kHz</li> <li>AM: Increment/decrement by 10 kHz</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                         |

# HD Radio™ Technology



## PSD

Program Service Data:

Contributes to the superior user experience of HD

Radio™ Technology. Presents song name, artist, station IDs, HD2/HD3 Channel Guide, and other relevant data streams.

## HD2/HD3

Adjacent traditional main stations are extra local FM channels. These HD2/HD3 Channels provide new, original music as well as deep cuts into traditional genre.

## Digital Sound

Digital, CD-quality sound. HD Radio™ Technology enables local radio stations to broadcast a clean digital signal. AM sounds like today's FM and FM sounds like a CD.

If an HD Radio™ broadcast is received, the radio mode will switch from analog broadcast to HD Radio™ broadcast.

## i Information

- The HD Radio™ screen is displayed only when a HD Radio™ broadcast is being received

## HD Radio™ Mode Display Controls



| Name                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> HD Channel Number                     | Analog station and corresponding HD Radio channel number saved in the preset list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>2</b> Broadcast Info                        | Displays detailed information about the current broadcast. (the details of the information shown are different depending on whether the Info button is selected)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b> HD Radio                              | When the HD Radio soft button is ON (the blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio signals will be received                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>4</b> HD Radio™ Reception & Channel buttons | <p>Displays main HD Radio™ channels and used to directly select the current available channels</p> <p><b>i</b> HD Radio technology allows AM and FM radio stations to transmit audio and data using a digital signal. The HD Radio format allows stations to simultaneously broadcast one or more different programs in addition to the program being transmitted on the station's analog channel. When the HD Radio soft button on the screen is ON (blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio reception will become active whenever a broadcast channel sends an HD Radio signal and when the vehicle is in areas where the signal reception is strong. If multiple HD Radio programs are available, a soft button for each channel will appear on the screen allowing you to select from HD1, HD2, etc.</p> |

You can access the radio player either by pressing the **RADIO** key or by selecting the Radio menu option from All Menus on the Home screen. Select the SiriusXM™ tab from the radio player.



**i Information**

- If you press the **RADIO** key when the power is off, then the power will turn on and a radio broadcast will be tuned up.
- If you are in the SiriusXM™ mode, select the SiriusXM™ radio widget from the Home screen to access the radio player.
- When the power is off, pressing the **RADIO** key will turn the power on and play a SiriusXM™ Radio broadcast.

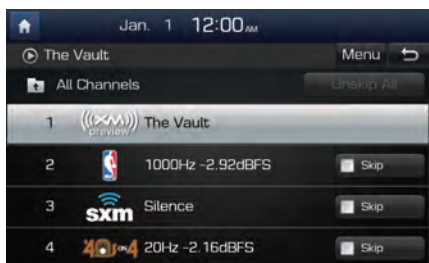
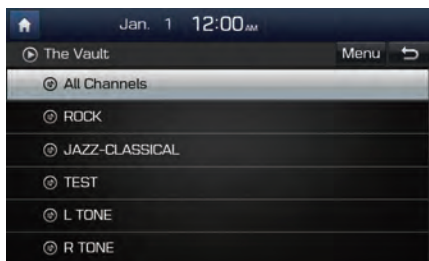
| Features                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode Display                | Displays current operating mode<br>If you press FM, AM or SiriusXM, mode will change to selected one in Radio                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2 Preset                      | Shows saved presets for user selection<br>After selecting frequency → press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the preset button. A ‘beep’ will sound and the frequency is saved to the selected preset button<br><b>i</b> A total of 18 frequencies for SiriusXM™ modes can be saved. |
| 3 Channel Logo                | Displays the current channel logo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 Channel Info                | Displays the current channel number and name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 5 Contents Info               | Displays the artist, title and other information about the current playing song                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 6 Category Info               | Displays the current playing category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 7 Scan                        | Plays all receivable channels for 10 seconds each                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 8 Direct Tune                 | Used to search for channels by entering channel numbers                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 9 Category                    | If you press Category, when search channels through SEEK, Tune and Scan, search it in the current category                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 10 Category Selection Buttons | Used to select the previous/next category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



| Features                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>11</b> Play Live     | It will change to listening live broadcast mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>12</b> Skip Backward | Repeats the previously broadcasted program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Holding for less than 0.8 seconds: moves to the previous segment</li> <li>• Holding for longer than 0.8 seconds: moves to the previous 5 seconds</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>13</b> Play Pause    | Pauses/plays the current broadcasting program.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>14</b> Skip Forward  | Moves to the next segment.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>15</b> List          | Displays SiriusXM™ Radio Categories/Channel Lists                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>16</b> Menu          | <p>What's on My Preset?</p> <p>The program schedule saved in my preset (For more details, see Section 2.5. Viewing Menu.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Featured Favorite</li> </ul> <p>Theme channels recommended by SiriusXM™ (For more details, see Section 2.5. Viewing Menu.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preset Scan</li> </ul> <p>Plays preset frequencies for 5 seconds each</p> |
| <b>17</b> SEEK/TRACK    | <p>When key is pressed quickly. (under 0.8 seconds)</p> <p>Plays the previous/next channel</p> <p>When key is pressed and held. (over 0.8 seconds)</p> <p>Continuously changes the channel until the key is released and plays the current channel</p>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>18</b> TUNE          | Changes the channel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## Selecting through Channel/Category List

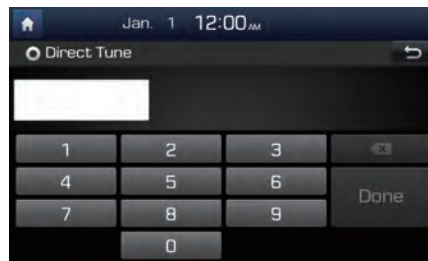
Select the **List** ► Select the desired category and channel.



Select the desired category and the channel. Once selected, the previous screen will be restored and the selected channel will begin playing.

If you select the **Skip** button, you can scan channels using the **SEEK** **TRACK** button or the **TUNE** knob by skipping the channels that you chose to skip.

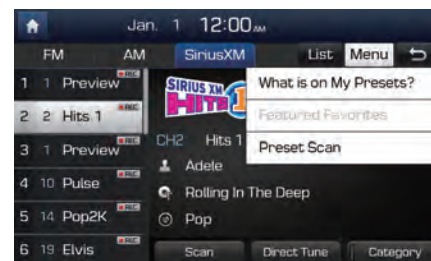
## Direct Tune



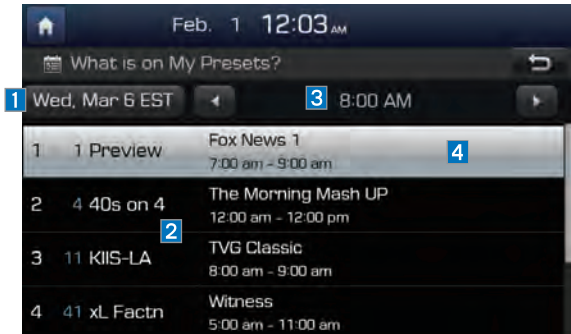
Enter the number of the channel you want to receive.

## Viewing Menu

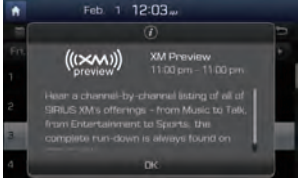
Using the **Menu** button on the right, you can view the program schedule and information about the Featured Favorites provided by SiriusXM™.



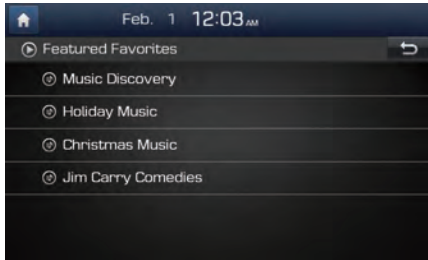
What's on My Preset? (Program Schedule)



Menu → What's on My Preset? You can select Menu to see program information and the schedules of broadcast channels listed in the Preset.

| Name |                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Change Broadcast Date | <p>By selecting this option, you can select a broadcasting date and time zone.<br/>Broadcast information will be provided for one week from the current date.</p>                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2    | Preset                | <p>Shows saved presets for user selection<br/><b>i</b> A total of 18 frequencies for SiriusXM™ modes can be displayed</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3    | Broadcasting Time     | <p>You can select the time that you want.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 4    | Program Information   | <p>Shows you the program titles to be broadcasted at the time that you have chosen.<br/>Select a program to see more details.</p>  <p><b>i</b> If there is more information on the program you selected, an arrow button will be displayed on the right of the list. You can see more program information by selecting the arrow button.</p> |

## Featured Favorites



Featured Favorites feature allows SiriusXM™ to broadcast additional presets

- Example 1: “Martha’s Favorites” may represent Martha Stuart’s favorites pre-sets on her radio
- Example 2: During holidays, “Holiday Music” may represent all the SiriusXM™ channels that are playing the holiday music for easy access by users

Multiple sets Featured Favorites data can be broadcast by SiriusXM™ and can change from time to time

## Precautions upon Handling Discs

### CAUTION

- After using a disc, put the disc back in its original case to prevent disc scratches.
- Do not use abnormally shaped discs (8cm, heart-shaped, octagon-shaped) as such discs could lead to errors.
- Do not clean discs with chemical solutions, such as record sprays, antistatic sprays, antistatic liquids, benzene, or thinners.
- Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight or high temperatures for prolonged periods of time. Such exposure may lead to disc deformation.
- Upon playing a disc contaminated by dirt or other substances, the sound quality may deteriorate and result in skipping sounds. Writing on either side of the disc could result in damage to disc surfaces.

- Clean fingerprints and dust off the disc surface (coated side) with a soft cloth.
- Copy-protected CDs, such as S-type CDs, may not properly operate in the device. DATA CDs cannot be played. (However, such discs may still abnormally operate.)
- Do not disassemble the device. Contact a designated service center in case of problems. (Complete after service assistance will not be provided if the user disassembles the device.)
- Do not use water to clean the device. Exposure to water could lead to product damage.
- Do not introduce foreign substances into the disc insert/eject slot. Introducing foreign substances could damage the device interior.
- The device may not properly operate in extremely hot or cold temperatures. (The operating temperature range is: 14°F ~ 150°F)

- Steam can become condensed on the fiber-optic lens due to rain, wet conditions, or upon operating the heating system. In such cases, discs may not be properly recognized. Remove the disc and wait until the moisture dries.
- Skipping may occur during audio play when driving on bumpy roads for prolonged periods of time or upon severe shock to the vehicle. In case of severe shock, audio may not properly play.

## Supported Disc Formats

This device supports the following disc formats.

### Disc Type

| Disc Type | Disc Format                           | Device Support    |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| CD        | 3inch (8cm)                           | X                 |
|           | 5inch (12cm)                          | O                 |
|           | CD                                    | O                 |
|           | CD-R                                  | O (Read Only)     |
|           | CD-RW                                 | O (Read Only)     |
|           | Multisession-CD                       | O (Read Only)     |
| SACD      | SACD                                  | X                 |
|           | (Single, SACD layer)<br>SACD (Hybrid) | X (Only CD layer) |

### Disc Format

| Disc Type | Disc Format | Device Support |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| CD        | CD-DA       | O              |
|           | MP3         | O              |
|           | WMA         | O              |
|           | MPEG4 AAC   | X              |
|           | DTS-CD      | X              |
|           | CD-ROM      | O              |
|           | CD-G        | X              |
|           | CD-EXTRA    | O              |
|           | CD-TEXT     | O              |
|           |             |                |

## Disc/Content Format Compatibility

### By Format according to Disc Type

| Disc Type | Disc Format   | Device Support |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|
| CD        | LPCM          | O              |
| MP3       | MPEG1, Layer3 | O              |
|           | MPEG2, Layer3 | O              |
|           | MPEG2.5       | O              |
| WMA       | Ver9          | O              |

## Ordinary Disc Compatibility

This device has been designed/manufactured to be compatible with software bearing the following logo marks.



Audio-CD

- CD-R/RW discs (Audio CD) created with CD recording devices or PCs may not properly operate in the device. This is a result of various causes, including disc format, recording method, and contamination to the disc or lens.

### CD-R/RW Compatibility

- This device supports CD-R, CD-RW, and MP3 discs burned in Audio CD formats.
- The recording of CD-R and CD-RW discs with this device is not supported.
- CD-R/RW discs recorded as audio CDs that were not finalized are not supported by this device.

### PC-created Disc Compatibility

- When burning a disc on a PC, the disc may not operate in this device depending on the software settings. In such cases, inquire with the software manufacturer.
- Additional information regarding compatibility is displayed on the CD-R/RW software disc box.
- DVD-R/W discs are not compatible with this device.

### Cautions upon Writing CDs

- When a multi-session disc is being recorded, make sure to close the session before recording.
- If MP3/WMA file extensions are changed, such could result in errors.
- In the case of MP3/WMA, write using only English. (Other languages are not supported)
- Unauthorized use of copy-protected music files is prohibited by law.
- Prolonged use of CD-R/CD-RW products that do not satisfy related specifications may result in abnormal operation.
- When writing CDs, low-speed writing is recommended.

### Compressed Audio Compatibility

- Physical formats of CD: Model 1, Model 2 XA format 1.
- This device supports audio file compressed through MPEG-1 audio stream layer 3 (MP3) using 8kbps ~ 320kbps. (CBR or VBR)
- For stable operation, the use of files in 95kbps~192kbps bit rate range and 44.1kHz SAMPLING frequency is recommended.
- This device supports WMA audio files using 20kbps ~ 320kbps. (CBR or VBR)
- Variable bit rate files may operate, but the play time information may not be properly displayed.
- This device only supports tracks with file extension of “.mp3” or “.wma”.
- This device does not support multisession discs.
- This device supports only 8 layer folders.

- This device supports MP3 ID3 tag versions of Ver. 1.0, Ver. 1.1, Ver. 2.2, Ver. 2.3, Ver. 2.4. When using discs with other versions, the ID3 info will not be displayed.
- Although this device has been designated to be compatible with various bit rates, playing low bit rate MP3 tracks may result in low quality sound.

---

## Before Playing an MP3 Disc

---

### Supported MP3 File Specification

- Acceptable standard: MPEG1 Audio Layer 3.
- Acceptable sampling frequency: 8, 11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, 48(kHz).
- Acceptable bit rate: 8 ~ 320 (Kbps).

### Recommended Bit Rates and Frequency

- Sampling frequency: 96 ~ 192 Kbps fixed bit rate/44.1kHz.



### NOTICE

- Supported ID3 tags: ID3v1.0, ID3v1.1, ID3v1.2, ID3v2.2, ID3v2.3, ID3v2.4.
  - Supported MP3 Media: CD-ROM.
  - Supported media formats: ISO9660 LEVEL1 and LEVEL2.
- 

### Detailed Specification

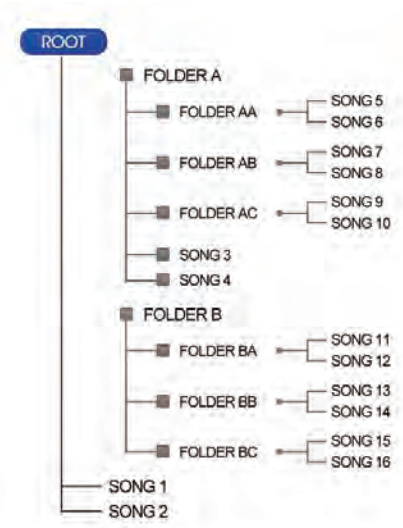
- Maximum directory layers: 8 layers.
- Maximum folder length: 64 bytes, file name length: 64 bytes.
- Supported characters for folder name/file name: 2350 characters for Alphanumeric character and Korean character sets, 4888 characters for Simplified Chinese character set.
- Maximum number of folders per disc: 256 folders. (including ROOT)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 512 files.

### Precautions upon Burning MP3 Files

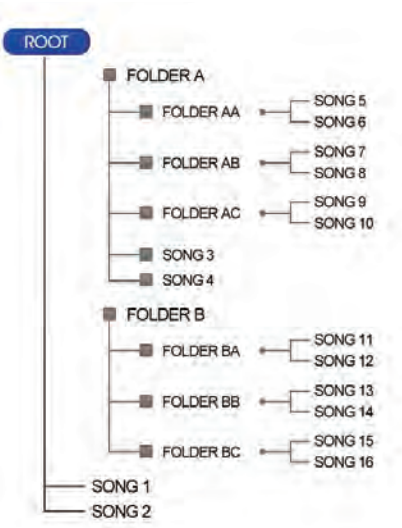
- The use of ISO 9660 LEVEL 2 JOLIET format is recommended.
- Up to 32 characters in Korean/Chinese are supported for file names and up to 20 characters in Korean/Chinese are supported for folder names.
- The use of CDs exceeding 700MB may result in faulty disc recognition or errors upon play.

MP3 File Structure

Recognition occurs through the same folder structure used within the disc.

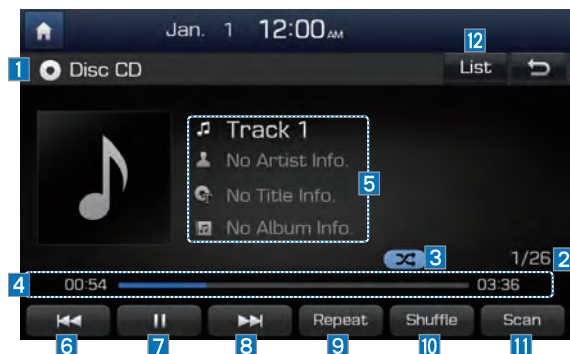


Folder structure as saved in CD-ROM



Folder structure as saved in the system

## Disc CD



| Name                  | Description                                                       |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode                | Displays current operating mode                                   |
| 2 Track Index         | Shows the current track/total tracks                              |
| 3 Repeat/Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function |
| 4 Play Time           | Displays the current play time                                    |
| 5 Play Info           | Displays track/artist/title/album information                     |

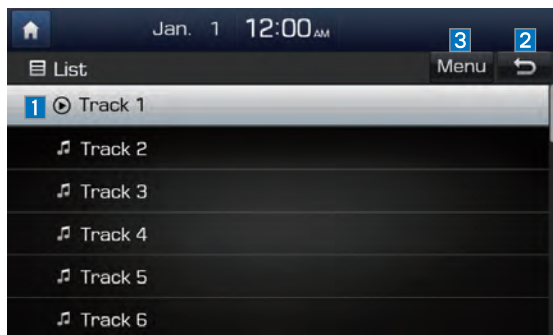
| Name             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 Previous Track | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| 7 Play/Pause     | Plays/pauses the current track                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 8 Next Track     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 9 Repeat         | Repeats the current track<br>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating the current track → and turning repeat off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 10 Shuffle       | Plays disc tracks in random order<br>Select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle all → and turning shuffle off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 11 Scan          | Scans the beginning parts of disc tracks (approx. 10 seconds per track)<br>Select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan all → and turning scan off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 12 List          | Moves to the track list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

### i Information

- Album artwork is not available in the Disc CD and Disc MP3 mode.

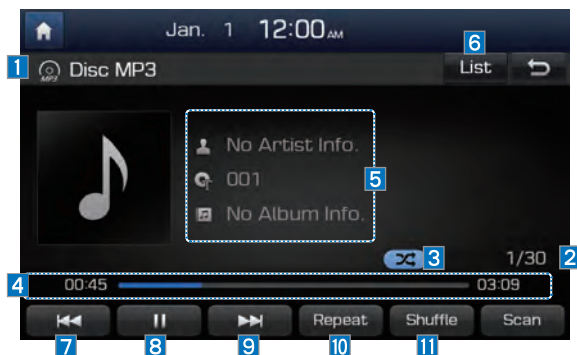


| Name    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 13 TUNE | <p>Turn the  TUNE knob and search a desired track. When the track name is displayed, press the  TUNE knob to play the track</p> <p> If the  TUNE knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p> |



| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Current Track | Displays current playing track name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>2</b> Back Button   | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b> Menu          | When moving to a different list screen, moves to the list page where the current file is located (Becomes disabled when the current list includes the current file)                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>4</b> SEEK/TRACK    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): plays previous/next track</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): moves to play screen, and then it will rewind or fast-forward the track.</li> </ul>                                                     |
| <b>5</b> TUNE          | Turn the  TUNE knob to move the focus to the next/previous track. If the desired track is selected, press the  TUNE knob to play the track. |

## Disc MP3

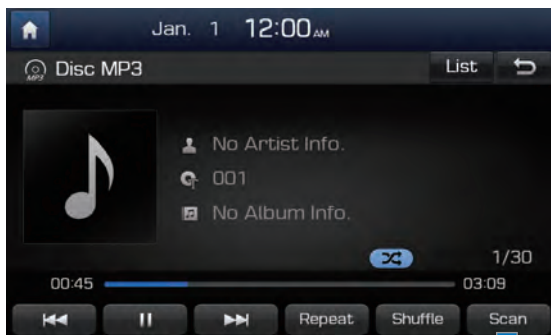


| Name                         | Description                                                       |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                | Displays current operating mode                                   |
| <b>2</b> File Index          | Shows the current MP3 file/total number of MP3 files              |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function |
| <b>4</b> Play Time           | Displays the current play time                                    |
| <b>5</b> Song Info           | Display artist, title, album info for current song                |
| <b>6</b> List                | Moves to the list screen                                          |

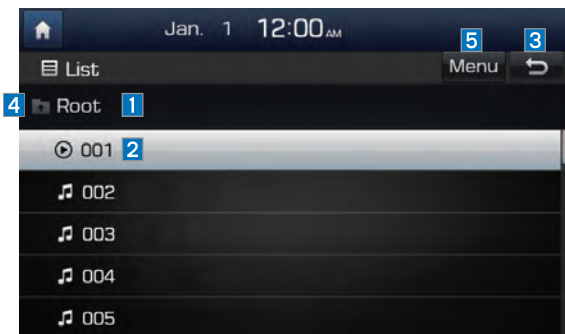
| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>7</b> Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause    | Plays/pauses the current track                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>9</b> Next File     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>10</b> Repeat       | <p>Repeats the current song or all songs in the folder</p> <p>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating 1 song → repeating folder → and turning repeat off</p> <p><b>i</b> Repeat 1 song: repeats the current song</p> <p>Repeat Folder: repeats songs in the folder</p>                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>11</b> Shuffle      | <p>Plays files in the folder or in the disc in random order</p> <p>Select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle folder → shuffle all → and turning shuffle off</p> <p><b>i</b> Shuffle folder: plays songs in the folder in random order</p> <p>Shuffle All: plays songs in the disc in random order.</p>                                                                                                                   |

### **i** Information

- Album artwork is not available in the Disc CD and Disc MP3 mode.



| Name    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 Scan | Scans the beginning parts of MP3 files (approx. 10 seconds per file)<br>Select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan folder → scan all → and turning scan off<br><b>i</b> Scan Folder: Scans tracks in the current folder<br>Scan All: Scans all tracks in the disc     |
| 13 TUNE | Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track<br><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored. |



| Name                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Folder Name  | Displays folder name for current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>2</b> Current Song | Displays current playing file name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>3</b> Back Button  | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>4</b> Upper Folder | Moves to root folder                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>5</b> Menu         | When moving to a different list screen, moves to the list page where the current file is located (Becomes disabled when the current list includes the current file)                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>6</b> SEEK/TRACK   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): plays previous/next track</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): moves to play screen, and then it will rewind or fast-forward the track.</li> </ul>                                                         |
| <b>7</b> TUNE         | Turn the  TUNE knob to move the focus to the previous/next track. If the desired track is displayed, press the  TUNE knob to play the track |

## USB

---

### Before Playing a USB MP3

---

Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on.

- Files that are not standard format music/image files will not be played.
- For MP3/WMA/OGG files, only music files with compression rates between 8Kbps ~ 320Kbps can be played.
- Heed caution to static electricity when connecting/disconnecting external USB devices.
- Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.
- When connecting an external USB device, the device may not properly recognize the USB is in some states.
- Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.
- This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.
- Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.

- Take caution so that the USB connector does not come in contact with body parts or objects.
- Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.
- Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.
- The amount of time required to recognize the external USB device may differ depending on the type, size, or file formats stored on the USB.
- The use of USB devices for purposes other than playing music and image files is prohibited.
- Do not use the USB I/F to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Such acts may lead to worsened performance or damage to the device.
- The device may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB directly with the multimedia terminal of the vehicle.
- When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.
- When application programs are installed to specific USBs, files may not properly play.

- The device may not operate normally if MP3 Players, cellular phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the device.
- Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.
- The device may not support normal operation when using a USB memory type besides Metal Cover Type USB Memory.
- The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.
- Upon playing iPods, please use a dedicated iPod car cable.
- Normal operations cannot be guaranteed when other cables are being used.
- The device will not support files locked by DRM. (Digital Rights Management)
- USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.
- Only use Plug type connector products, as shown in the figure below.
- To play USB MP3, the USB device must be connected to the USB port in the front multibox. The USB port in the center console storage (if equipped) is for charging only.



Plug Type Connector

| Product Name       | Manufacturer   |
|--------------------|----------------|
| XTICK              | LG             |
| BMK                | BMK Technology |
| SKY-DRV            | Sky Digital    |
| TRANSCEND JetFlash | Transcend      |
| Sandisk Cruzer     | SanDisk        |
| Micro ZyRUS        | ZyRUS          |
| NEXTIK             | Digiworks      |

### **i** Information

- Problems that occur through use of USB devices not listed within the above table are not covered by the product warranty.

## USB MP3 Information and Precautions

| Name                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MP3 File Specification                       | Specification: MPEG1 AUDIO LAYER 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Recommended Bit Rates and Sampling Frequency | Acceptable sampling frequency: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                              | Acceptable bit rate: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (Kbps)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                              | 96, 128, 192 Kbps fixed bit rate/44.1kHz                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| ID3 Tag                                      | Supports ID3v1.0 and ID3v1.1, ID3v2.2, ID3v2.3, ID3v2.4 ID3 tags                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Detailed Specifications                      | Maximum directory layers: 20 layers<br>Maximum length of folder name/file name: 255Bytes<br>Supported characters for folder name/file name: Alphanumeric characters, Korean standard character set 2,350 characters, Simplified Chinese 4888 characters<br>Maximum number of folders which can be stored onto one USB: 2000 folders (including ROOT)<br>Maximum number of files which can be stored onto one USB: 8000 |

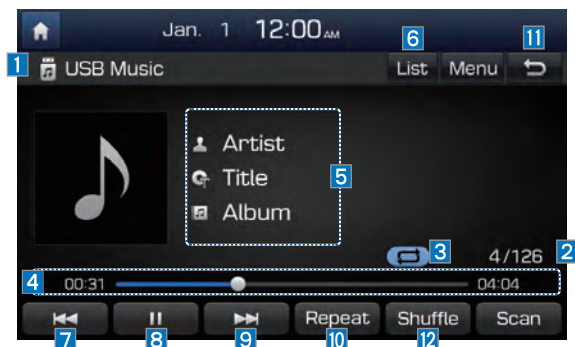
### Information

- The sound quality of MP3 files that use bitrates exceeding 192 Kbps cannot be guaranteed. When using files without fixed bit rates, some features (FF/REW features) may not properly operate.

## Supported Image Specifications

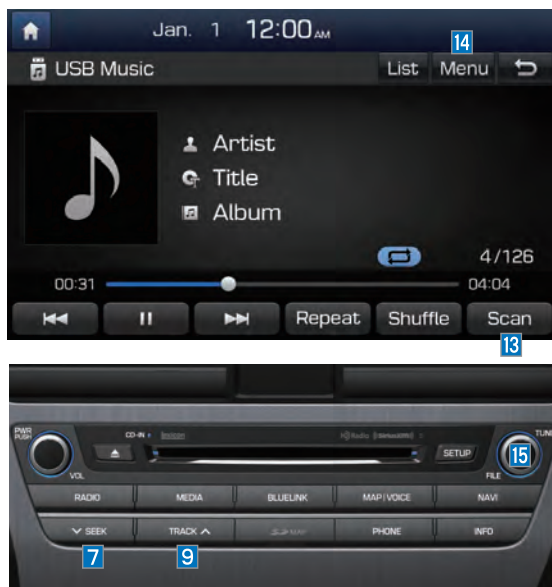
| Name                       | Description                                               |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Image format               | JPG, GIF, BMP, PNG (animated GIF, etc. are not supported) |
| Supported image resolution | 5M pixels for JPG, BMP, PNG (1M pixels maximum for GIF)   |
| Supported image file size  | 5M pixels for JPG, BMP, PNG (1M pixels maximum for GIF)   |

## USB Music

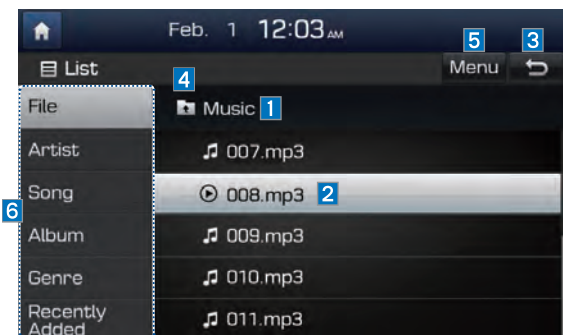


| Features                      | Description                                                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                 | Displays current operating mode                                   |
| <b>2</b> File Index           | Shows the current file/total files within the USB                 |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/ Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function |
| <b>4</b> Play Time            | Displays the current play time/total play time                    |
| <b>5</b> Song Info            | Displays the artist/title/album info                              |
| <b>6</b> List                 | Moves to the list screen                                          |

| Features               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>7</b> Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause    | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>9</b> Next File     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>10</b> Repeat       | <p>Repeats the current file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song, repeating folder and turning repeat off</li> <li>If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off</li> </ul>                          |
| <b>11</b> Back Button  | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>12</b> Shuffle      | <p>Plays files in random order</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle folder, shuffle all and turning shuffle off</li> <li>If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle category and turning shuffle off</li> </ul>                              |



| Features | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 13 Scan  | <p>Scans the beginning parts of USB files (approx. 10 seconds per file)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan folder, scan all and turning scan off</li> <li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan category and turning scan off</li> </ul> |
| 14 Menu  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Save to My Music: you can save the current track to My Music. You can play saved track from My Music without USB. Access to My Music in the Media mode</li> <li>• Delete Current File: a selected file can be deleted. Deleted file can be found in the "to_Delete" folder</li> </ul> <p><b>i</b> This function is only supported when USB format is compatible with FAT16 or FAT32.</p>        |
| 15 TUNE  | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track</p> <p>If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

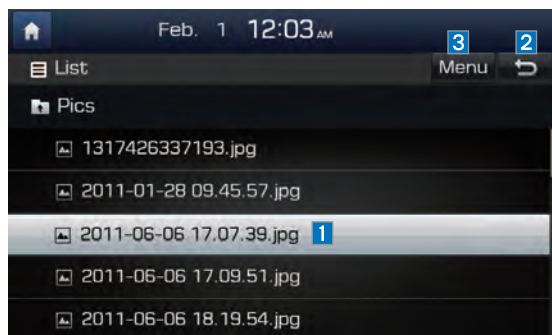


| Features                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Folder/Category Name  | Displays folder/category name in the list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>2</b> Current Song          | Displays current playing file name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>3</b> Back Button           | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>4</b> Upper Folder/Category | Moves to Upper Folder/Category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>5</b> Menu                  | Now Playing: when moving to a different list screen, moves to the list page where the current file is located (Becomes disabled when the current list includes the current file)                                                                                                                             |
| <b>6</b> Search Menu           | Search songs by the list type                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>7</b> SEEK/TRACK            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): plays previous/next track</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): moves to play screen, and then it will rewind or fast-forward the track</li> </ul>                                                     |
| <b>8</b> TUNE                  | Turn the  TUNE knob to move the focus to the previous/next list. If the desired track is displayed, press  TUNE knob to play the track |

## USB Image



| Features              | Description                                                    |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode                | Displays current operating mode                                |
| 2 Folder/File Name    | Displays folder name where image is located                    |
| 3 File Index          | Shows the current file/total files within the USB              |
| 4 Slideshow           | images as slideshow in 5, 10, 20, 30 second intervals          |
| 5 Rotate              | Rotate image in clockwise direction                            |
| 6 Info                | Shows the file name, resolution and file type of current image |
| 7 Adjust Image Size   | Enlarge/reduce (zoom-in/zoom-out) image size                   |
| 8 List                | Moves to the list screen                                       |
| 9 Previous/Next image | Swipe image left or right to see Previous/ Next image          |



| Features              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Current File | Displays current playing file name                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>2</b> Back Button  | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>3</b> Menu         | Now Playing: when moving to a different list screen, moves to the list page where the current file is located (Becomes disabled when the current list includes the current file)                                                                   |
| <b>4</b> SEEK/TRACK   | Controls background mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radio mode: changes frequency and channel</li> <li>• Media mode: changes track (excluding AUX)</li> </ul>                                                                        |
| <b>5</b> TUNE         | Controls background mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Radio mode: changes frequency and channel</li> <li>• Media mode: changes track (excluding AUX). If a desired track is displayed, press the knob to move to the track.</li> </ul> |

# iPod

## Using iPod Devices

- iPod is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
  - iPod mode will not operate if the connected iPod cannot be recognized due to operation of unsupported versions that do not support related protocols, iPod abnormalities, or iPod device defects. Some iPods with unsupported communication protocols may not properly operate with the Multimedia system.
  - For fifth generation iPod Nano devices, the iPod may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod for use.
  - Search/play orders shown within the iPod device may differ with the orders shown within the Multimedia system.
  - If the iPod malfunctions due to an iPod device defect, reset the iPod and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod manual)
  - If repeatedly connect and disconnect iPod/iPhone to the Multimedia system with USB cable in short time, it may cause abnormal operation.
  - The time for recognition of iPod/iPhone may vary depending on device type, firmware version and iOS version.
  - For some iPod Touch and iPhone devices, connecting Bluetooth® while the iPod is operating may result in discontinued iPod sound. When such devices with Bluetooth® support are connected, this problem occurs as the sound source is changed from the Dock Connector (USB connector cable) to Bluetooth.
  - To prevent this symptom, Bluetooth Audio function in the Multimedia system is limited if iPod/iPhone is connected to the system through both cable and Bluetooth. To listen to the iPod sound, use either iPod menu with USB connection or Bluetooth Audio with Bluetooth connection.
  - To listen to the iPod sound, reconnect the USB cable or change the audio output settings in iPod/iPhone to Dock.
  - In order to use the iPod while operating the keys, you must use a dedicated iPod cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod/ iPhone products)
- ※ During ACC ON state, connecting the iPod through the iPod cable (The cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod/ iPhone product.) will charge the iPod through the head unit.
- ※ **The use of genuine iPod cables supplied by Apple is recommended. (The use of other products may result in noise or abnormal operation.)**

- When connecting with the iPod cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference. If the iPod is connected to the vehicle while it is playing, a high pitch tone may sound for about 1~2 seconds immediately after connection. If possible, connect the iPod to the vehicle with the iPod stopped/paused.
- Within iPhones, streaming audio and iPod control may occasionally conflict. If problems persist, remove the iPhone and connect again.
- When connecting to iPod Nano /Classic, the Genesis Brand Motor logo appears on the Apple device. For the iPod Nano 6 generation, however, the logo image does not appear since it is not supported. Also, all iPhone and iPod Touch products do not support this function.
- In Apple's iOS 6.0 version or later, Podcast and Audiobook media files are designed to be played with the Podcasts and iBooks applications specifically designed for Apple products. If the Apple device does not provide the Podcast and Audiobook lists, the playlist may not be displayed and played in the AVN iPod mode.
- If the Apple Podcasts and iBooks apps are not installed on the Apple device, but the Apple device provides the Podcast and Audiobook lists, you can play files in other categories in AVN iPod mode.

## Caution

- While using a connected iPhone/iPod Touch device, it may not operate normally if the user changed some functions in the device.
- When calling with an iPhone connection, song may stop playing due to an Apple device feature. If sound does not resume after the call is terminated, check the device status.
- If lots of songs have the same information, skipping may occur when previous/next song is executed due to an Apple device feature. Also problems may occur depending on device type or iOS version.
- If lots of songs have the same information, it may occur difference of playing songs between the Multimedia system and Apple device. Reset the device or delete the same songs in the Apple device using iTunes.

- If you control pause, repeat, shuffle, or seek songs when the play time is when the play time is less than 3s before finished playing, it may occur difference of playing song between the Multimedia system and Apple device. Access to iPod music from another mode or pause a song and then play a song again in Apple device.

- We recommend that your Apple device uses the latest firmware since some problems may occur due to an outdated firmware or other software related issues.

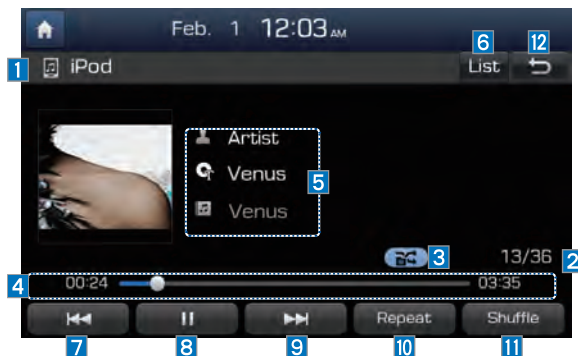
| Type         | 1G                                                                | 2G | 3G | 4G | 5G                     | 6G                  | 6.5G                | 7G           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| iPod Mini    | Not Supported                                                     |    |    |    |                        |                     |                     |              |
| iPod Shuffle | Not Supported                                                     |    |    |    |                        |                     |                     |              |
| iPod Nano    | ○                                                                 | ○  | ○  | ○  | ○                      | ○                   | Not released        | ○            |
| iPod Touch   | ○<br>(iOS 1.1 not supported)                                      | ○  | ○  | ○  | ○                      | Not released        |                     |              |
| iPad         | ○ (Unable to charge, Not verified, Normal working not guaranteed) |    |    |    |                        |                     |                     |              |
| iPad Mini    | ○ (Unable to charge, Not verified, Normal working not guaranteed) |    |    |    |                        |                     |                     |              |
| iPod Classic | Not Supported                                                     |    |    |    | ○<br>(iPod with Video) | ○<br>(iPod Classic) | ○<br>(iPod Classic) | Not released |

| Type   | 3G                                          | 3GS | 4G | 4GS | 5G |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|-----|----|-----|----|
| iPhone | Not verified, Normal working not guaranteed | ○   | ○  | ○   | ○  |

## Caution

- If the iPhone/iPod Touch supports Bluetooth, it is unable to use Bluetooth Audio if the Apple device that is connected to the Multimedia system through both USB connection and Bluetooth. Disconnect the USB connection then use Bluetooth Audio
- If iPod/iPhone connected to the Multimedia system through both USB and AUX. iPod/iPhone keeps output sound via AUX, thus it may occur sound will not output in iPod mode.
- If AUX cable connected to iPod/iPhone but not connect to the Multimedia system, it may occur sound will not output in iPod mode due to iPod/iPhone's feature. Especially, if you use AUX cable like pictures, this problem may occur.
- Disconnect AUX cable from iPod/iPhone first, then connect to the Multimedia system via USB. Or change settings to "Dock" in iPod/iPhone.
- If connect to the Multimedia system while podcast or iTunes music downloading to iPod/iPhone, it may occur some problems when you select song in the list. Reconnect iPod/iPhone to the Multimedia system when downloading is finished or the file deleted.
- If connect to the Multimedia system while sync, it may occur some problems. Try to use iPod/iPhone connection after sync complete. (To learn more, refer to your iPod manual)
- iPhone and iPod Touch devices are guaranteed to work normally on iOS 7.0.6 or below. However, they may not work normally on future iOS versions as their operations have not yet been tested.

## iPod

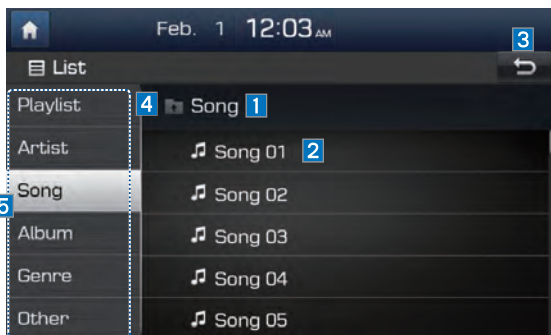


| Features                | Description                                                  |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode           | Displays current operating mode                              |
| <b>2</b> Song Index     | Shows the current song/total songs                           |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/Shuffle | From Repeat/Shuffle, displays the current operating function |
| <b>4</b> Play Time      | Displays the current play time/total play time               |
| <b>5</b> Song Info      | Displays the artist/title/album info                         |
| <b>6</b> List           | Moves to the list screen                                     |

| Features               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>7</b> Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause    | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>9</b> Next File     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>10</b> Repeat       | Repeats the current file<br>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating 1 track and turning repeat off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>11</b> Shuffle      | Plays files in random order<br>When selecting <b>Shuffle</b> button, it changes to shuffle category and deactivate shuffle then repeat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shuffle Category: shuffle song in the current category</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>12</b> Back Button  | Move to home/previous mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |



| Features       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>13</b> TUNE | <p>Turn the  TUNE knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the  TUNE knob to play the track</p> <p> If the  TUNE knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p> |



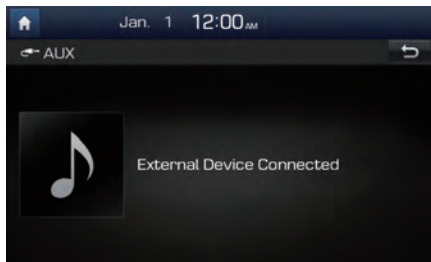
| Features               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Category Name | Displays the category name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>2</b> Category List | Displays the contents of selected category<br><i>i</i> If there are many items in the list, items are added in order and the scroll bar on the right is adjusted accordingly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b> Back Button   | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>4</b> Upper Folder  | Moves to Upper Folder                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>5</b> Search Menu   | Search songs by the list type                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>6</b> SEEK/TRACK    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): plays previous/next track</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): moves to play screen, and then it will rewind or fast-forward the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>7</b> TUNE          | Turn the  TUNE knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the  TUNE knob to play the track<br>If you do not anything with the knob for 5 seconds, the  TUNE knob search will be terminated |

## AUX

### Connecting an External Device

If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.

- AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.
- The AUX volume can also be controlled separately through the connected device.



### NOTICE

- If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.
- When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.



※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

# Bluetooth® Audio



| Features        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode          | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 Phone Name    | Displays name of connected phone                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 3 Artist Info   | Name of current artist                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 Title         | Name of current song                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 5 Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to the previous file</li><li>• If play time is over than 3 seconds, plays the current file from the beginning</li></ul> <i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone. |
| 6 Play/Pause    | Plays/Pauses Bluetooth Audio                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 7 Next File     | Moves to the next file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 8 Repeat        | Repeats the current file<br><i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 9 Shuffle       | Plays files in random order<br><i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 10 Connections  | Moves to the Bluetooth Settings. You can pair a new device or change/delete paired device(s).                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 11 SEEK/TRACK   | Plays the previous/next file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 12 TUNE         | TUNE is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

### *i* Information

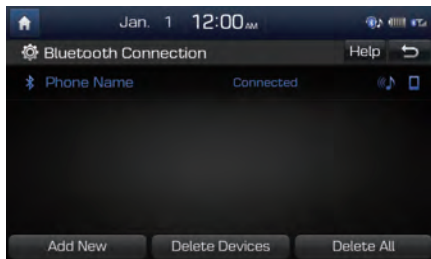
- Artist info and Title may not be supported by mobile phone

---

## Bluetooth Connections Settings

---

Settings for pairing, connection and disconnection of a Bluetooth device.



- In Bluetooth Audio play screen, Select

Connections .

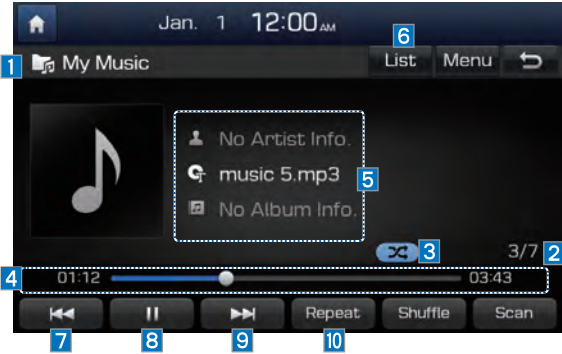
---

### **i** Information

---

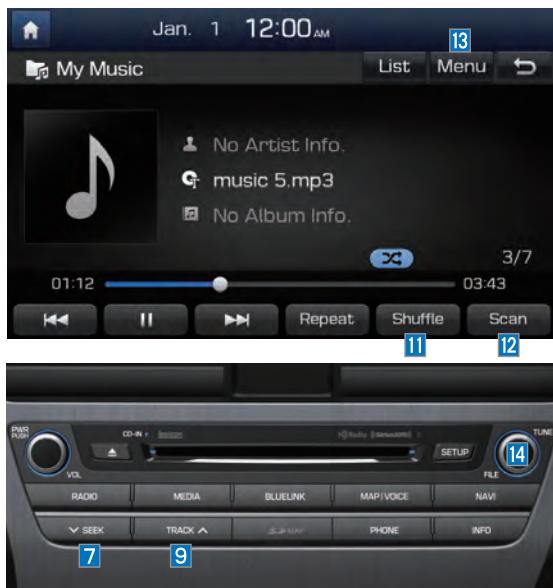
- If the music in the mobile phone is not played after changing to audio streaming mode, press the play button. Thus check if the music is playing in the Bluetooth device after changing to audio streaming mode. Audio streaming may not be supported for some mobile phones.
  - Please check the Bluetooth compatibility in below website: Genesis Brand Customer Care [owners.genesis.com](http://owners.genesis.com)
-

# My Music



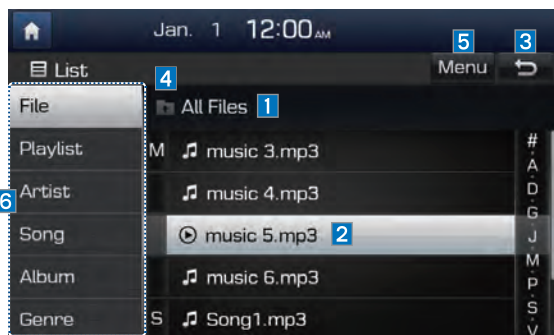
| Features               | Description                                                       |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode                 | Displays current operating mode                                   |
| 2 File Index           | Shows the current file/total files                                |
| 3 Repeat/ Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function |
| 4 Play Time            | Displays the current play time/total play time                    |

| Features        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 Song Info     | Displays the artist/title/album info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 6 List          | Moves to the list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 7 Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li><li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li><li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li><li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li></ul> |
| 8 Play/Pause    | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 9 Next File     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li><li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 10 Repeat       | <p>Repeats the current file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off</li><li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off</li></ul>                                          |



| Features | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 Scan  | <p>Scans the beginning parts of files (approx. 10seconds per file)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan and turning scan off</li> <li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan and turning scan off</li> </ul> |
| 13 Menu  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add to Playlist: adds the current song to the Playlist Playlist is placed on the left tab in the list</li> <li>• Delete Current File: deletes the current track from My Music.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 14 TUNE  | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.</p> <p><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p>                                                                                                               |

| Features   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11 Shuffle | <p>Plays files in random order</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle and turning shuffle off</li> <li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle and turning shuffle off</li> </ul> |



| Features                      | Description                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Folder/Category Name | Displays folder/category name in the list |
| <b>2</b> Current Song         | Displays current playing file name        |
| <b>3</b> Back Button          | Converts to basic mode screen             |
| <b>4</b> Upper Folder         | Moves to Root Folder                      |

| Features             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>5</b> Menu        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add to Playlist: Adds the current track to the Playlist: Playlist is placed on the left tab in the list (Maximum 100 files) Select a track and press “Add to Playlist” to add the track in the playlist</li> <li>• Delete from Playlist: Select a track from the playlist and press “Delete from Playlist” to delete the track in the playlist</li> <li>• Delete Files: Deletes files from My Music</li> <li>• <b>i</b> If delete file from My Music, the information related to song also deleted in the list.</li> <li>• Now Playing: When moving to a different list screen, moves to the list page where the current file is located (Becomes disabled when the current list includes the current file)</li> </ul> |
| <b>6</b> Search Menu | Search songs by the list type                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>7</b> SEEK/TRACK  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): plays previous/next track</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): moves to play screen, and then it will rewind or fast-forward the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>8</b> TUNE        | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to move the focus to previous/next file. If the file you want to play is displayed, press <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.</p> <p><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, Tune search will be terminated.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

# 03

## part.3 Bluetooth

Before Using the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Handsfree  
Bluetooth Connection  
Bluetooth Phone

# Bluetooth

## Before Using the Bluetooth® Handsfree

---

### What is *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology?

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, Bluetooth® phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with Bluetooth® mobile phones through the Multimedia system.

- The Bluetooth® Handsfree feature may not be supported in some mobile phones. For more information on mobile phone compatibility, visit the website.
  - Genesis Brand Customer Care: owners.genesis.com



#### **WARNING**

##### **- Distracted Driving**

- Focus on the road while driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Drivers should not use any hand held devices or other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver during vehicle operation.
- Do not stare at the multimedia screen for long periods of time while driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time can lead to traffic accidents and can result in personal injuries.

---

### **Precautions for Safe Driving**

- Bluetooth® is a feature that enables drivers to make handsfree calls. Connecting the head unit with a Bluetooth® phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phonebook. Before using *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.
- Excessive use or operations while driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents. Do not operate the device excessively while driving.
- **Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.**

---

## CAUTIONS upon Connecting Bluetooth® Phone

---

- Before connecting the head unit with the mobile phone, check to see that the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® features
  - Even if the phone supports *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology, the phone will not be found during device searches if the phone has been set to hidden state or the Bluetooth® power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the Bluetooth® power prior to searching/connecting with the head unit.
  - If Auto Connection is used, the Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when the ignition is turned on, making it unnecessary to have to connect the phone with the head unit every time.
- If you do not want automatic connection with your Bluetooth® device, turn the Bluetooth® feature off of the Bluetooth® device.
  - Park the vehicle when connecting the head unit with the mobile phone.
  - Bluetooth® connection may become intermittently disconnected in some mobile phones. Follow these steps to try again.
    1. Turn the Bluetooth® function within the mobile phone OFF/ON and try again.
    2. Turn the mobile phone power OFF/ON and try again.
    3. Completely remove the mobile phone battery, reboot, and then again.
    4. Reboot the Multimedia System and try again.
    5. Delete all paired devices from both of Phone and Head Unit sides and then try again
  - The Handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the mobile phone.
  - Pairing Bluetooth® devices and use of other Bluetooth® features are not supported when the vehicle is in motion. For safety, please first park your vehicle.
  - If you continue having issue downloading your contacts to your vehicle, contact your mobile phone provider.

## Bluetooth Connection

### Pairing a New Device

Before you can use the Bluetooth feature, you must first pair/connect your mobile phone to your car.

Up to 5 Bluetooth devices can be paired.

Only one Bluetooth device can be connected at a time.

### Pairing a New Device by Selecting Phone/Call

Press the **PHONE** key or  key in the steering wheel control. ► Pair your car after your mobile phone detects the Bluetooth device. ► Enter the passkey or accept the authorization popup. ► Connect Bluetooth.

### Pairing a New Device Through the Phone Settings

Press the **SETUP** key. ► Select **Bluetooth**.  
► Select **Bluetooth Connection**. ► Select **Add New**. ► Pair your car after your mobile phone detects the Bluetooth device. ► Enter the passkey or accept the authorization popup. ► Connect Bluetooth.



The default passkey is 0000.

The Vehicle Name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.

### Connecting Bluetooth Devices

Connects the Bluetooth devices that you add.

### Connecting Devices by Selecting Phone/Call

Press the **PHONE** key or  key in the steering wheel control. ► Select the name of the device to connect. ► Connect Bluetooth.



## Connecting Devices Through the Phone Settings

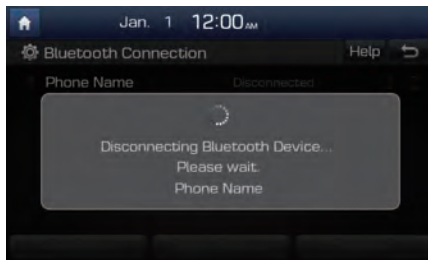
Press the **SETUP** key. ▶ Select **Bluetooth**.  
▶ Select **Bluetooth Connection**. ▶ Select the name of the device to connect. ▶ Connect Bluetooth.



## Disconnecting Bluetooth Devices

Disconnects Bluetooth devices that are connected.

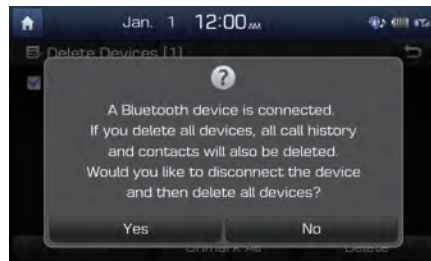
Press the **SETUP** key. ▶ Select **Bluetooth**.  
▶ Select **Bluetooth Connection**. ▶ Select the name of the device to disconnect.



## Deleting Bluetooth Devices

Deletes the Bluetooth devices that you added. Note that deleting a Bluetooth device will delete all Call History and Contact Info downloaded along with it.

Press the **SETUP** key. ▶ Select **Bluetooth**.  
▶ Select **Bluetooth Connection**. ▶ Select **Delete Devices**. ▶ Select the device name to delete. ▶ Select **Delete**.

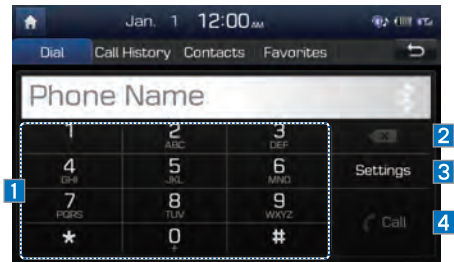




# Dial

Dials a call after the Bluetooth devices are connected.

Press the **PHONE** key, and then **Dial**.

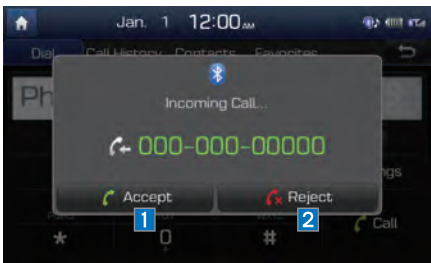


| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Keypad   | Use the keypad to enter the phone number that you want to call. Press and hold the last number of a speed dial to dial a number that you added to the Speed Dial list in the phone |
| 2 Delete   | Deletes the numbers that you entered.                                                                                                                                              |
| 3 Settings | Moves to a screen of Phone Settings.                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 Call     | Makes a call after you dial a number and select CALL. If the number is listed in Dialed Calls, you can select the number and press CALL to automatically dial that number again.   |

## i Information

- Some types of mobile phones may not support the Speed Dial function.

# Accept/Reject Call



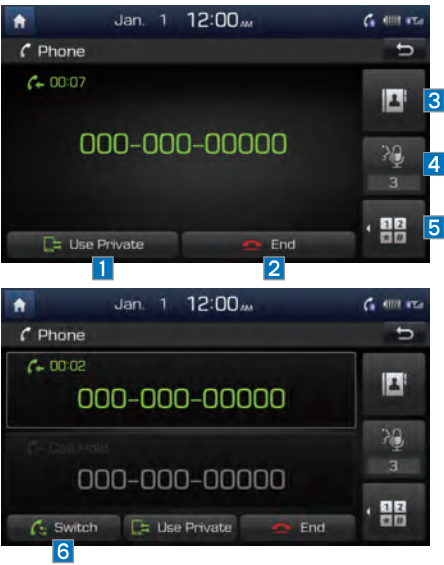
If there is an incoming call after you made a Bluetooth connection, a popup message will appear.

| Name     | Description       |
|----------|-------------------|
| 1 Accept | Answers the call. |
| 2 Reject | Ignores the call. |

## i Information

- In some mobile phones, the caller's number may not be displayed, and the Reject feature may not be supported.

# Using the Menu During a Phone Call



When making a call, you can use the following menu items.

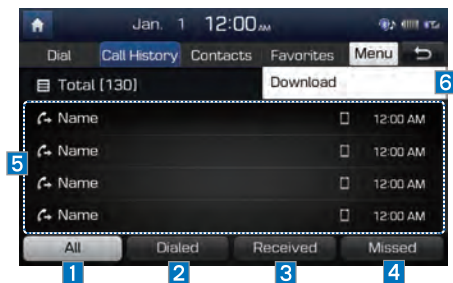
| Name              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Use Private     | Switches a voice call from the car Hands-free to the mobile phone.                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2 End             | Ends a call.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 3 Contacts        | Displays the Contacts list.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 Outgoing Volume | Displays the Mic Volume settings. You can adjust the in-call volume that the other party hears (level 1 - 5).                                                                                                             |
| 5 Keypad          | Moves to a screen for entering ARS numbers.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 6 Switch          | Switches to a call on hold, if any. You can also switch calls by selecting the number in the Information Display. The Switch function switches the current call to a waiting call in order to answer a new incoming call. |

## i Information

- If the caller's number is listed in Contacts, the caller's name will be displayed. Otherwise, only the number will be displayed. In some mobile phones, the phone number may not be displayed.
- In some Bluetooth devices, the Use Private feature may not be supported.
- In some Bluetooth devices, the Switch feature may not be supported.
- During a phone call on a Bluetooth Hands-free, you cannot access other modes, such as Radio and Setup.
- Depending on handset types, the in-call volume the other party hears may differ. If the other party hears your voice too low or too loud, adjust the mic volume.

## Call History

Press the **PHONE** key, and then **Call History**.



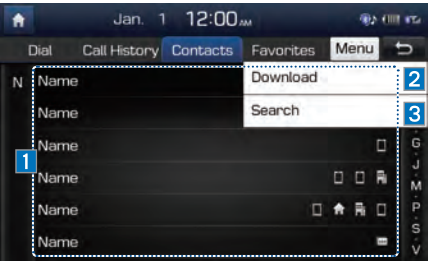
| Name                  | Description                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> All          | Lists the all call history.                                                 |
| <b>2</b> Dialed       | Lists the calls that you made.                                              |
| <b>3</b> Received     | Lists the calls that you have received.                                     |
| <b>4</b> Missed       | Lists the calls you missed.                                                 |
| <b>5</b> Call History | Displays all of your call history. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| <b>6</b> Download     | Downloads the call history information from your mobile phone.              |

## **i** Information

- In some mobile phones, call records may not be added to your Call History.
- Calls from restricted ID's are not added to your Call History Information.
- Up to 50 calls can be added in each Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Missed Calls list.
- The durations of each dialed/received call are not displayed in your car's Call History list.
- While the call history download is in progress, the status bar displays an icon **(i)**.
- If the call history download is turned off on the Bluetooth device, the call history download will fail.
- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history. If download fails, check if the Bluetooth settings or display status are normal.
- Some devices do not support call history download. Check if your Bluetooth device supports download feature. For details regarding Bluetooth-supported devices and their functional compatibility, visit owners.genesis.com

# Contacts

Press the **PHONE** key, and then **Contacts**



| Name                   | Description                                                    |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Contacts List | The list of Contacts. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| <b>2</b> Download      | Downloads contacts from your mobile phone.                     |
| <b>3</b> Search        | Searches Contacts.                                             |

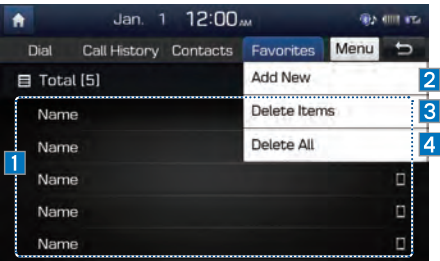
## i Information

- Up to 5000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth device.
- You cannot edit or delete downloaded phone numbers from your car.
- Contacts can be viewed only when the Bluetooth device is connected.
- Even if the Bluetooth device is disconnected, the downloaded data will remain. (Note that deleting a paired phone will also delete all downloaded Contacts and Call History data)
- Downloaded phone numbers may be lost depending on the condition of the head unit. Keep your important data in a safe place.
- Contacts from both the SIM card and your mobile phone are downloaded at the same time by default.
- The status bar displays a (📶) while downloading contacts.
- The download will not be available if the contacts download function is turned off on your Bluetooth device.

- Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your contacts. If download fails, check your phone screen and confirm the download if necessary.
- Some devices do not support contacts download feature. Check if your Bluetooth device supports contacts download. For Bluetooth supporting devices details and compatibility, visit [owners.genesis.com](http://owners.genesis.com)

# Favorites

Press the **PHONE** key, and then **Favorites**.



| Name           | Description                                                                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Favorites    | Lists the phone numbers saved as Favorites. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| 2 Add New      | Adds a new number to Favorites.                                                      |
| 3 Delete Items | Deletes numbers that you select from Favorites.                                      |
| 4 Delete All   | Deletes all of the numbers from Favorites.                                           |

MEMO

## part.4 Blue Link<sup>®</sup> Control

Name and Function of Each Part

Before Use

Getting Started with Blue Link

Driving Info

Send to Car with Google

Vehicle Diagnostics

Blue Link Settings

Blue Link Voice Local Search

04

# Blue Link® Control

## Name and Function of Each Part

### Rear View Mirror Switch

#### Using the Rear View Mirror switch

Selecting the Rear View mirror switch will allow you to make service required inquiries, place search, and emergency Service by connecting to the Blue Link Center. Such features can be used only after subscribing to the Blue Link service.



※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

| Instructions Display |  | Contents                                                           |
|----------------------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                    |  | Start or ends the Blue Link call.                                  |
| 2                    |  | Request information about places via Blue Link Voice Local Search. |
| 3                    |  | Start or ends the SOS call.                                        |

※ Refer to Blue Link service manual for more Blue Link features.

## Before Use

---

### What Is Blue Link?

---

This is a telematics service based on our cutting-edge IT system that makes your driving experience more convenient and fun and features safety, security, vehicle diagnostics, remote control and even smartphone synchronization functions.

Enjoy a smarter driving style with Blue Link.

---

### What Is Telematics?

---

The word “Telematics” stems from the combination of telecommunications and informatics, and refers to an information system that provides a variety of driving information through the built-in terminal by analyzing each symptom and driving state. This allows for a much safer and more comfortable driving experience.

---

### About Transmission and Reception of Radio Waves

---

Connection to the Blue Link Center or wireless data transmission may be disrupted in the following places.

For radio wave transmission/reception status, refer to the status displayed on the Blue Link screen.

It is recommended that you use the Blue Link system when the antenna icon () shows four bars or more.

Places where Blue Link may be disrupted depending on the transmission/reception status:

- Inside tunnels
- Mountainous areas or dense forest
- Roads close to cliff edges
- Densely built-up areas
- On highways or roads underneath higher interchange roads
- Inside buildings

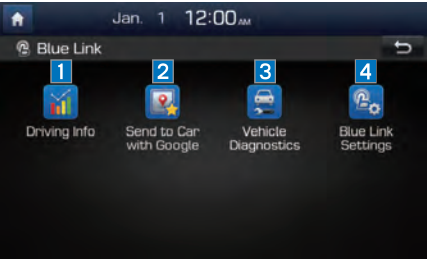
# Getting Started with Blue Link

Use Blue Link features such as Driving Info and Vehicle Diagnostics. Blue Link features can be used after activating the service.

## Information

- A separate fee may be charged for using Blue Link, and features may differ according to your service plan.

Press the **BLUELINK** key in the head unit.



| Name                             | Description                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Driving Info            | Displays information such as Driving Time/Idle Time, Deceleration/Acceleration Distribution, Driving Speed and Driving Distance. |
| <b>2</b> Send to Car with Google | Displays information about places received via Blue Link Voice Local Search.                                                     |
| <b>3</b> Vehicle Diagnostics     | Inspects vehicle malfunctions and provides diagnostics.                                                                          |
| <b>4</b> Blue Link Settings      | Activates the service or displays modem information.                                                                             |

# Connecting with the Blue Link Center

Press the **** key in the rear-view mirror to connect with the Blue Link center.



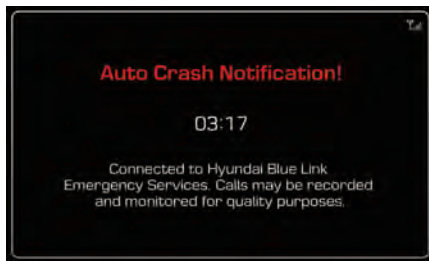
---

## Blue Link<sup>®</sup> Safety and Security Service

---

### Auto Crash Notification

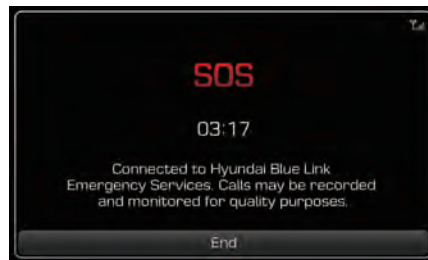
Provides immediate assistance when an accident occurs and an airbag is deployed. In this event, an ACN signal, containing customer and location information, will automatically be transmitted to the response center. Upon receipt of the signal, a response specialist will attempt to establish voice communications with the vehicle occupants and forward any pertinent information to Blue Link emergency services.



### SOS

Customers request emergency Blue Link emergence services by pressing the dedicated **SOS** key in the vehicle. This action transmits vehicle information and location to specially trained response specialists, who assist in coordinating the dispatch of appropriate emergency assistance to the customer.

The response specialist remains on the line with the customer until advised assistance has arrived.



---

## Stolen Vehicle Recovery

---

In the event a customer's vehicle is reported stolen (and a stolen vehicle report has been filed with the appropriate police department), the response center can provide assistance to the police in an attempt to recover the vehicle.

### Vehicle Slowdown

Used with Stolen Vehicle Recovery, this enables law enforcement to gradually reduce the engine power of the vehicle, thus slowing it down to safe levels. A warning shall be transmitted to the driver prior to the slowdown procedure.

### Vehicle Immobilization

Used with Stolen Vehicle Recovery, this enables law enforcement to send a signal to the vehicle which immobilizes the engine management system, thus preventing startup. This capability is only valid when the ignition is off, but can be saved for later immobilization if the vehicle is on or in motion at the time of signal transmission.

# Driving Info

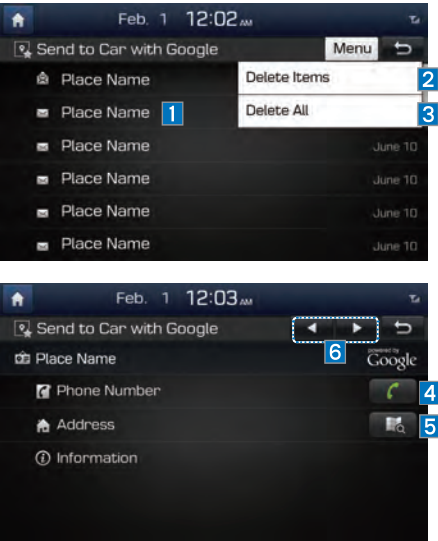
Press the **BLUELINK** key ► Select **Driving Info**.



This service can be used while your car is stopped and the engine is on.  
Select **Update** button to receive up-to-date driving information.

# Send to Car with Google

Press the **BLUELINK** key ► Select **Send to Car with Google**.

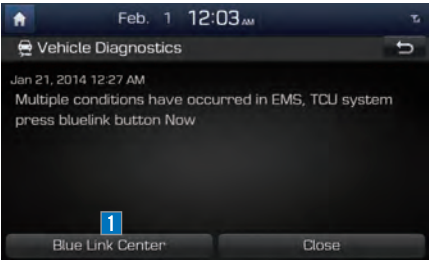
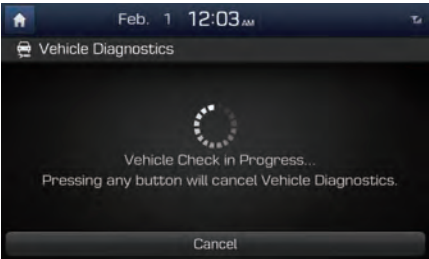


| Name            | Description                                                                     |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Place list    | Displays the list of received places                                            |
| 2 Delete Items  | Deletes selected items from the place list.                                     |
| 3 Delete All    | Deletes all items from the place list.                                          |
| 4 Dial          | Displays the phone number of a selected place. Press the number to make a call. |
| 5 View Map      | Displays the address of a selected place. Press the address to view map         |
| 6 Previous/Next | Displays the previous or next place information.                                |

You can check information about places received via Blue Link Voice Local Search. To use Send to Car with Google, first you need to sign up to the Blue Link.

# Vehicle Diagnostics

Press the **BLUELINK** key ► Select  
Vehicle Diagnostics .



| Name                      | Description                                              |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Blue Link Center | Calls the Blue Link Center to check for vehicle problems |

You can have your vehicle inspected only after stopping the vehicle because some control units can't be diagnosed while driving.

Vehicle Diagnostics will be canceled if you switch to another screen while diagnosis is in progress.

To receive result details, you need to first sign up to the Blue Link.

# Blue Link Settings

For more details, refer to part 9. Setup > Blue Link Settings.

# Blue Link Voice Local Search

## What is Blue Link Voice Local Search?

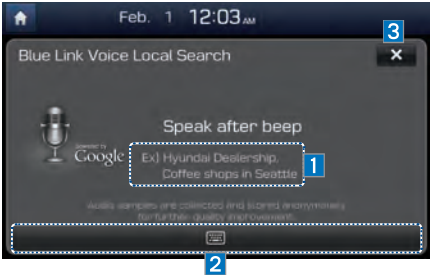
With Blue Link network service, you can search for Google-provided place names with your voice.

Separated from Voice Recognition in the steering wheel, it specializes in place name searches and may be run with a  key in the rear-view mirror.

The search is done through network services; it is only available when connected to a communication network.

## Starting Blue Link Voice Local Search

Press  key in the rear-view mirror (less than 0.8 seconds) to start Blue Link Voice Local Search.



| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Example command             | Shows an example to ask for a place search.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2 Manual search switch button | Switches the Blue Link Voice Local Search screen to manual search.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 End button                  | Ends Blue Link Voice Local Search.<br><b>i</b> With Blue Link Voice Local Search, press the  key in the rear-view mirror again to end the service. |

# 05

## part.5 Navigation

Basic Features

Menu

Search

Route

Navigation Settings

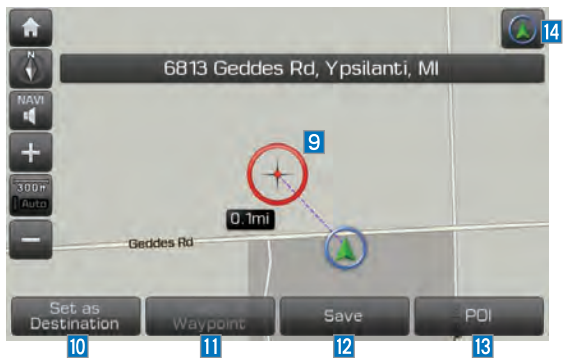
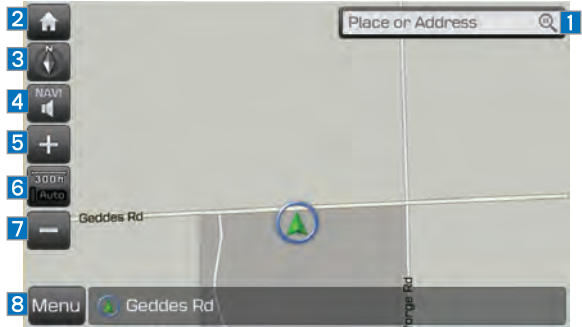
Troubleshooting

# Navigation

## Basic Features

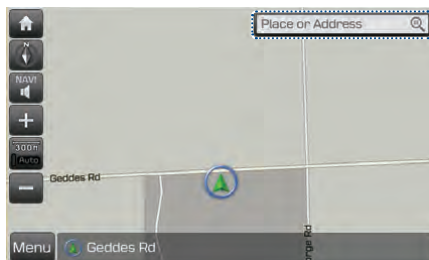
### Operating Navigation Screen

Basic features on the map screen.



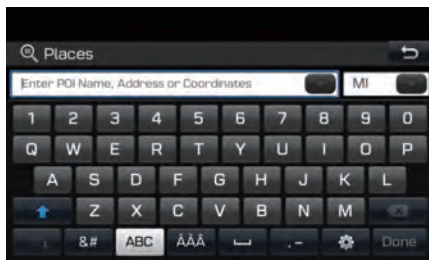
|    | Name | Description                                                    |
|----|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  |      | Go to the Place menu.                                          |
| 2  |      | Move to the Home Screen                                        |
| 3  |      | Change the map view mode.                                      |
| 4  |      | Adjusts the volume.                                            |
| 5  |      | Zoom in the map.                                               |
| 6  |      | Zoom out the map.                                              |
| 7  |      | Set the zoom level automatically according to the guidance.    |
| 8  |      | Quick and easy selection of a destination and options.         |
| 9  |      | Touch to scroll the map.                                       |
| 10 |      | Quick and easy selection of a destination from the map screen. |
| 11 |      | Set a waypoint to the current route.                           |
| 12 |      | Save frequently used address to address book.                  |
| 13 |      | Find a POI(Point Of Interest) around the current position.     |
| 14 |      | View the vehicle's current position on the map screen.         |

## Places



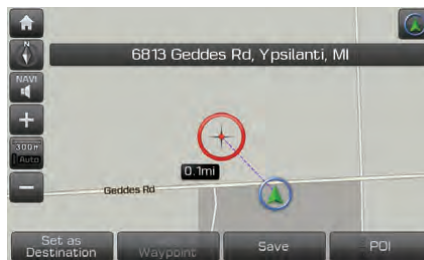
You can use this menu when the gear is in “Parking” mode and there is no destination set.

Press the Search screen to move to “Places”.



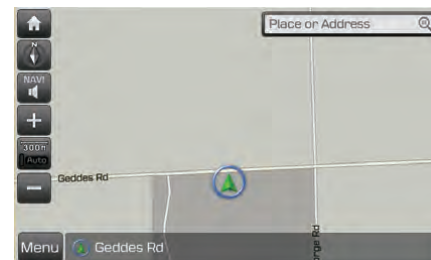
Please refer to “Places” in “Destination Search” for more details.

## Changing Map View

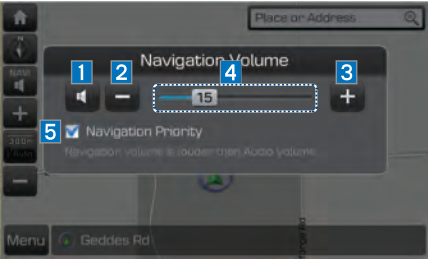


Touch the compass arrow icon to toggle between a map oriented to the North, oriented parallel to the vehicle's heading and 3D View.

## Navigation Volume



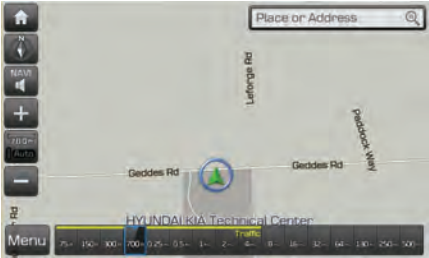
Select the  button to adjust the navigation volume.



| Name                                                                                | Description                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  | Set the volume to mute.                                      |
| 2  | Turn the volume down                                         |
| 3  | Turn the volume up                                           |
| 4  | Slide to set the volume                                      |
| 5 Navigation Priority                                                               | Sets the volume of voice guidance louder than that of audio. |

## Zoom In/Zoom Out

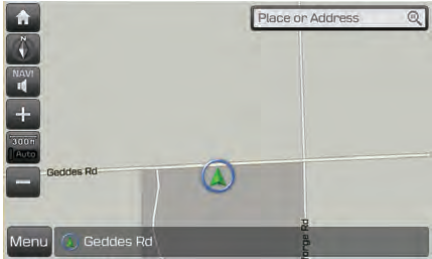
Zoom the map view screen in and out.



Select  or  to set the zoom level

## Map Scale

Sets the zoom level automatically according to the type of road.



| Name                                                                                           | Description                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  Scale Fix  | Manually adjust the map scale.                                    |
|  Auto Scale | Change the map scale automatically depending on the type of road. |

# Menu

## Route

Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen ► Select the **Route** button



Select the **Route** button to set **Reroute**, **Route Options**, **Detour** or **Edit Route**.

## Reroute



The **Reroute** button is active only when there is an active route.

You can search a route again.

## Route Option

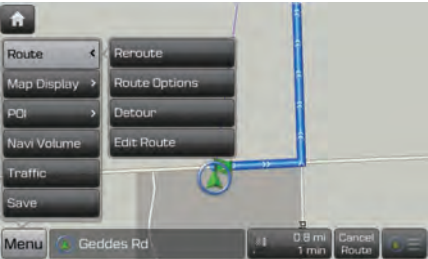


You can select an option from Route, Traffic Information, Freeway, Toll Roads, Ferry, HOV/Carpool Lanes, Electronic Toll or Private/Gated Roads.

Select the **Save** button to save your selection.

If there is a route already saved, another route will be searched.

Detour

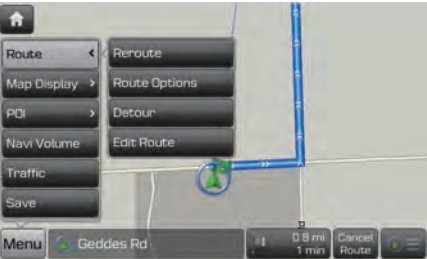


The **Detour** button is active only when there is an active route.

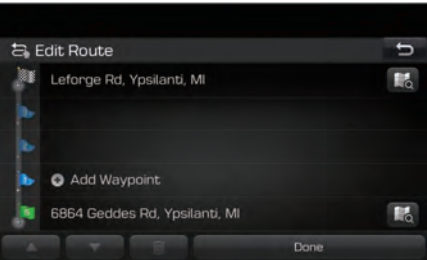


Selected distance is detoured from the current location.

Edit Route



Select the **Edit Route** button to change the route. Refer to the **Route** ► **Edit Route** section in the manual for more information.



Map Display

Displays the direction of the map.

Press **N**, **Heading Up** or **3D**.



| Name                               | Description                                                                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> <b>N</b><br>North Up (2D) | Displays always has north at the top of screen.                                            |
| <b>2</b> <b>Heading Up</b><br>(2D) | Displays always shows the vehicle's direction as proceeding towards the top of the screen. |
| <b>3</b> <b>3D</b> (3D)            | Shows the map in 3 dimintions.                                                             |
| <b>4</b> <b>3D Buildings</b>       | Shows or hides build-ings on the map.                                                      |

# Nearby POIs

Display nearby POIs on the map.

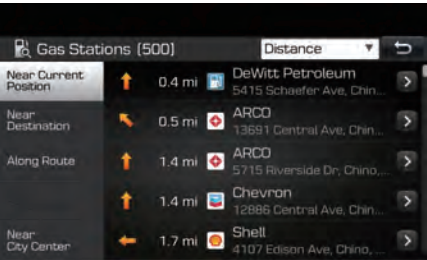
## View Nearby POIs

Select the **Menu** on the bottom of the left screen ► Select the **POI** button.

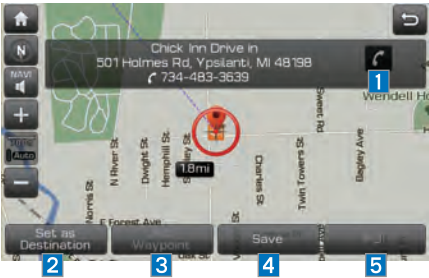


Select the **On** , **Off** button to set whether to show nearby POIs or not. When categories are selected, they will appear on the map. (ex. Gas Station)

The lists of nearby gas station are displayed.

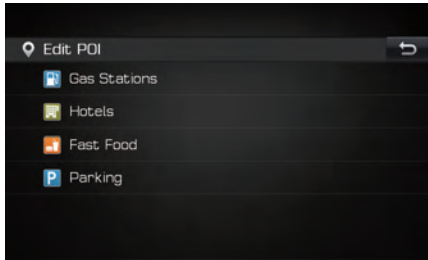


The list can be sorted to display in order of distance or name.

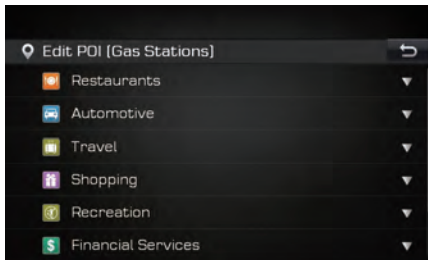


| Name                        | Description                                                                |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                           | Call to the selected location. (Phone needs to be connected via Bluetooth) |
| 2 <b>Set as Destination</b> | Set the place as a destination.                                            |
| 3 <b>Add Waypoint</b>       | Set the location as a waypoint.                                            |
| 4 <b>Save</b>               | Save the location.                                                         |
| 5 <b>POI</b>                | Search nearby POIs.                                                        |

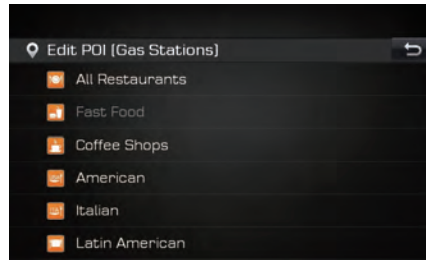
## • Editing



Change the shortcut POIs to display for your shortcuts. (ex. Gas Station)



Select the desired category to change. (ex. Restaurants)



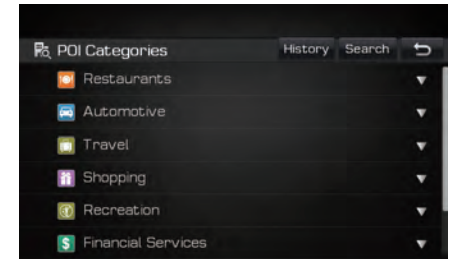
Select new category to display. (ex. American)



Gas Stations button is changed to American

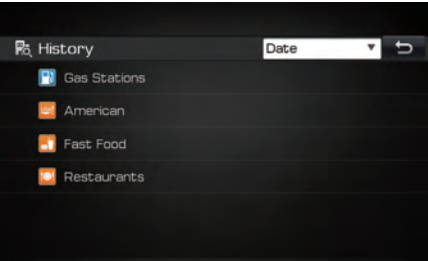
## • Searching POI categories

Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen. ► Select the **POI** button. ► Select the **POI Categories** button. ► Select the desired item.

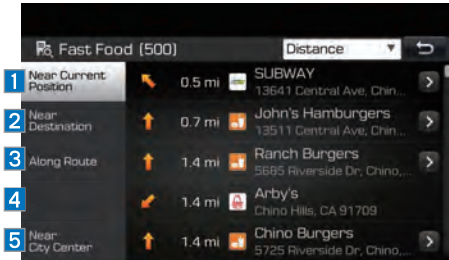
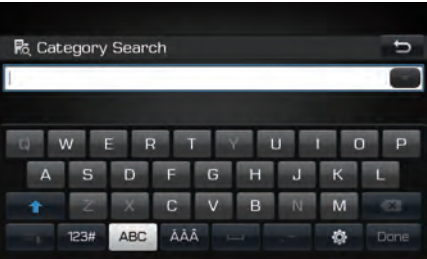


Select the item to search.

Select the **History** button to check the previous search result.



Select the **Search** button to search the POI category by name.



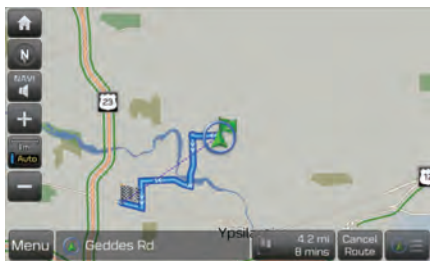
Select the desired POI to check the location and for detailed information.

| Name | Description                                                                                                                                          |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Search POI around the current position.                                                                                                              |
| 2    | Search POI around the destination.<br><i>i</i> Active only when a route's planned.                                                                   |
| 3    | Search POI along route.<br><i>i</i> Active only when a route's planned.                                                                              |
| 4    | Search POI around the current cursor when the map scrolled.<br><i>i</i> Active only when the cursor position is different from the vehicle position. |
| 5    | Search POI around the city selected.                                                                                                                 |

## Traffic

Select the **Menu** button. ► Select the **Traffic** button.

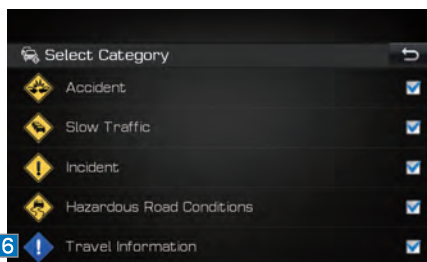
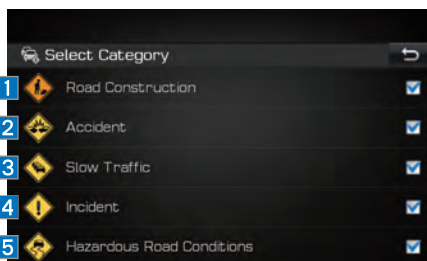
## Traffic List



On the traffic list, the current traffic/road event information is displayed in order of distance

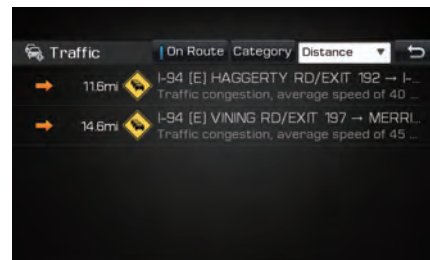
| Name | Description                                              |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Direction from the current location.                     |
| 2    | Distance from the current location. (mi or km)           |
| 3    | Displays traffic info symbol based on the type of event. |
| 4    | Description of traffic event.                            |

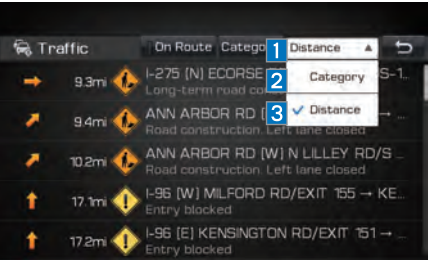
Additional traffic information may be displayed upon clicking on the **Category** button.



| Name | Description                                      |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Display 'Road Construction' information.         |
| 2    | Display 'Accident' information.                  |
| 3    | Display 'Slow Traffic' information.              |
| 4    | Display 'Incident' information.                  |
| 5    | Display 'Hazardous Road Conditions' information. |
| 6    | Display 'Travel Information'.                    |

When On Route is activated, only traffic information on your route is displayed.





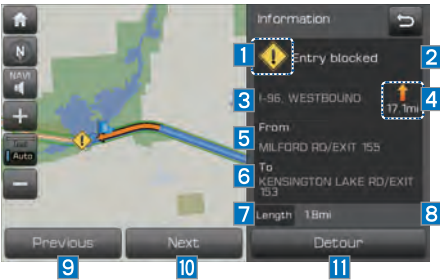
On the traffic list, the current basic traffic/road event information is displayed in order of distance.

Select the combo box to change the arrangement in order of distance/category.

| Name | Description                                                                                                   |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select the combo box to arrange.                                                                              |
| 2    | Arrangement by category: Display traffic information arranged in order of traffic information event type.     |
| 3    | Arrangement by distance: Display the traffic information in order of distance closer to the current location. |

### Traffic detail

Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen. ▶ Select the **Traffic** button.



Select the traffic information on the traffic list to display the detailed screen as shown in the screen.

Display the symbol of traffic event and arrow which indicates the road from start to end of the traffic event. Detailed information is available on the right screen.

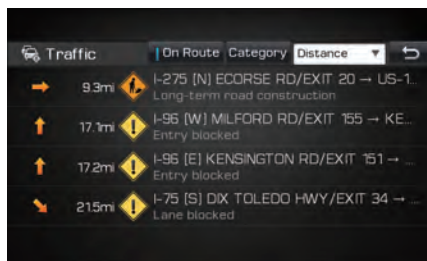
| Name | Description                                       |
|------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Symbol of traffic event                           |
| 2    | Event name of traffic information                 |
| 3    | Road name / road number including direction       |
| 4    | Direction and distance from the current location  |
| 5    | Intersection where traffic event starts           |
| 6    | Intersection where traffic event ends             |
| 7    | Total distance of traffic event                   |
| 8    | Estimated delay time                              |
| 9    | Check the previous traffic information            |
| 10   | Check the next traffic information                |
| 11   | Detour the route based on the traffic information |

## Traffic detour

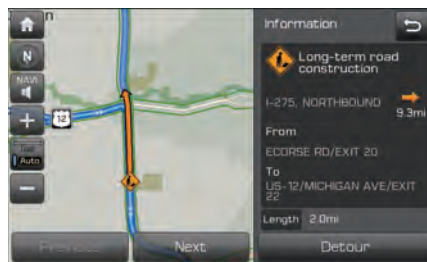
Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen. ► Select the **Traffic** button.

If there is traffic information on the route, it is possible to detour the route using traffic information and search other routes.

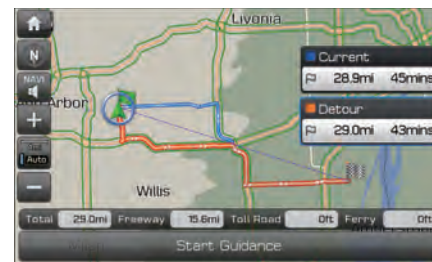
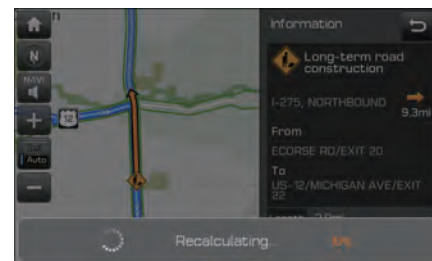
When the **Detour** button is enabled in the View Traffic Detail, press the **Detour** button to detour.



Select the desired section.



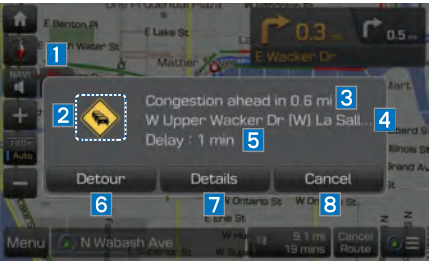
Check the information and press the **Detour** button.



Select the **Start Guidance** button to apply the detoured sections and search other routes.

Traffic Pop-up

Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen. ► Select the **Traffic** button.

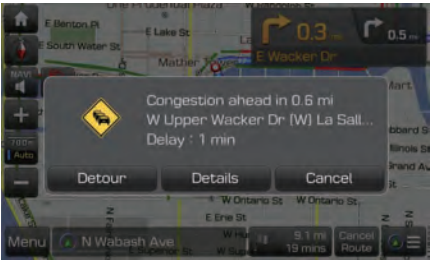


If there is a red traffic flow on the route, the Traffic icon will be shown right next to the Volume icon. Click this icon to open the Traffic pop-up window.

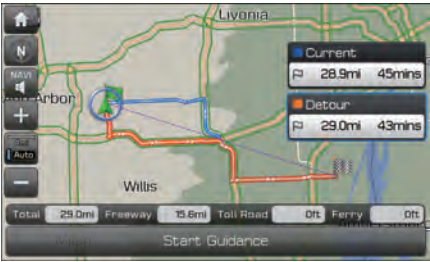
On the traffic information popup window, brief information is displayed and Details and Detour can be selected.

You can enable/disable the Traffic icon and pop-ups on the **Navigation Setting** ► **Traffic** menu.

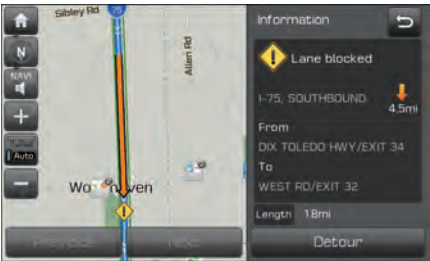
| Name | Description                                           |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Pop-up Icon                                           |
| 2    | Symbol of traffic event                               |
| 3    | Road Name / Road Number                               |
| 4    | Distance from current location                        |
| 5    | Estimated delay time                                  |
| 6    | Search detour route                                   |
| 7    | View the detailed information regarding traffic event |
| 8    | Close the pop-up message                              |



On the traffic information pop-up, select **Detour** or **Details** to perform action.



Select **Detour** to change the route.



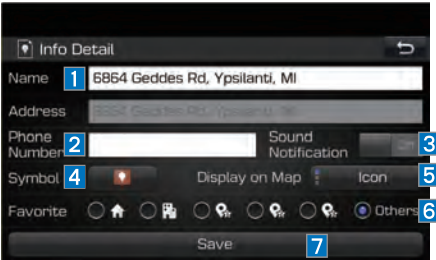
Select the **Details** button for further information.

# Save

Select the **Menu** button on the left bottom of the screen. ► Select the **Save**



To store the location on the current map to the address book.



| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                              |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Change the name.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2    | Enter the phone number.                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3    | Select the <b>On</b> , <b>Off</b> button to set the sound notification.                                                                                                  |
| 4    | Possible to register <b>Symbol</b> .                                                                                                                                     |
| 5    | Press <b>Icon&amp;Name</b> , <b>Icon</b> or <b>None</b> to display on the map screen.                                                                                    |
| 6    | Designate to the <b>Favorite</b> item. When the favorite is designated, press the button on the bottom of the Destination menu and request the route guide immediately.. |
| 7    | Save the setting.                                                                                                                                                        |

# Search

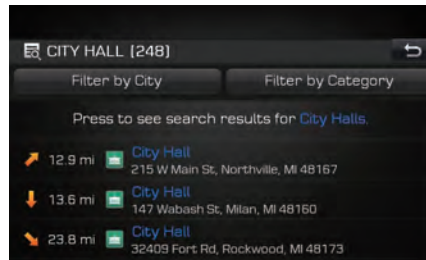
## Places

You can enter POI Name, Address, or Coordinates that you wish to search by.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Place or Address** search bar.



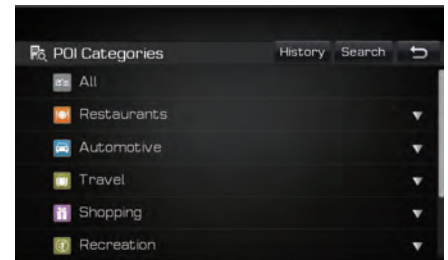
Enter the POI Name, Address and Coordinates of the location you want in the input window above, and select the **Done** button.



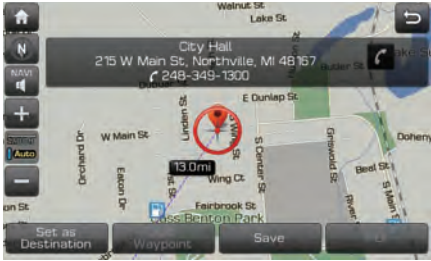
If you select a location from the search result list, it will bring you to the point.



If you select the **Filter by City** button on the search result screen, it will bring you to the City search screen where you can filter the search results by city names.



If you select the **Filter by Category** button from the search result screen, it will bring you to the POI Categories screen where you can filter the search results by POI Categories.



Once the destination has been identified either by POI name, address, or coordinates, the map screen will be displayed. From this screen you can set the destination or add a waypoint, or add the displayed destination to your address book.

## Address

Set destination by address search.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **Address** icon.



## How to Search Address

Address

House No.

Enter House No.

City

Enter City

Street

Enter Street

State

MI

1

2

3

Delete

4

5

6

7

8

9

Skip

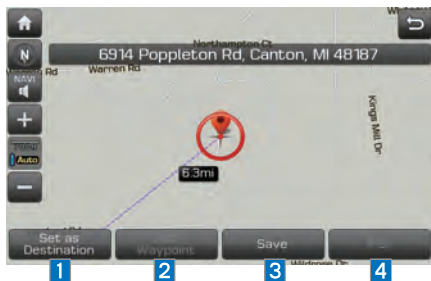
ABC

0

-

| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select state to search.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2    | Enter house number. If you don't know the house number, select <b>Skip</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3    | Enter the street name. Entering exact street name is required. The letters on the keyboard are automatically enabled and disabled based on the search result, and words are automatically completed.<br>When same street names are available in other cities, the lists of city are displayed. |
| 4    | Select a city before entering the street name. Addresses are searched only from the selected city.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

Search criteria can be entered in any order. Example: [State] then [City] then [Street] then [House No.]



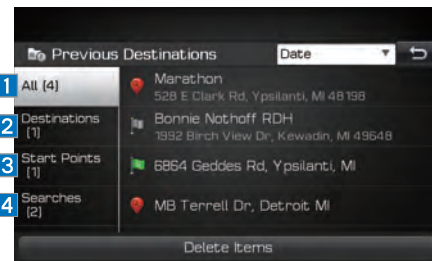
Enter the address to check the location information on the map.

| Name                        | Description                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Set as Destination | Set the location as a destination. |
| <b>2</b> Add Waypoint       | Set the location as a waypoint.    |
| <b>3</b> Save               | Save the location                  |
| <b>4</b> POI                | Search nearby POIs.                |

## Previous Destinations

Select from previously inputted addresses and POI's.

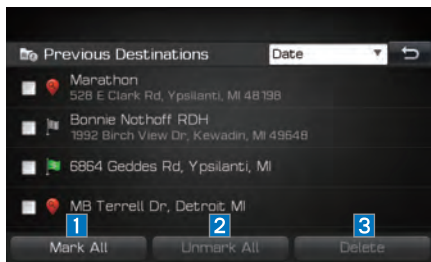
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Previous Destinations** icon.



Arrange by all, latest destinations, latest searched places and latest departing places.

Arrange in order of date and name.

| Name     | Description                                                                                                                             |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | Display all destinations, departing places, and searched places.                                                                        |
| <b>2</b> | Display previous destination places for route guidance                                                                                  |
| <b>3</b> | Display previous departing places for route guidance                                                                                    |
| <b>4</b> | Display previously searched places for route guidance.<br><b>i</b> But, not displayed when the searched places are set as destination.. |



Select the **Delete** button to delete the information.

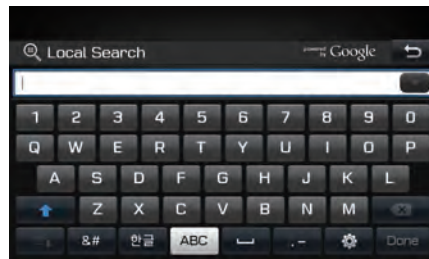
| Name         | Description                  |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Mark All   | Select all.                  |
| 2 Unmark All | Deselect all.                |
| 3 Delete     | Delete the selected item(s). |

## Local Search

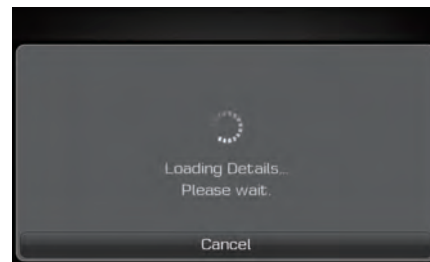
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Local Search** icon.



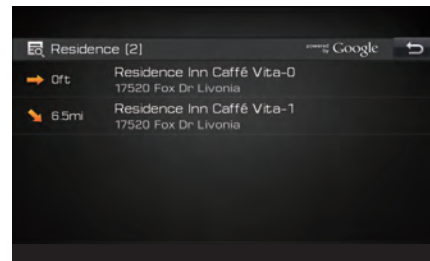
Runs Google Local Search.



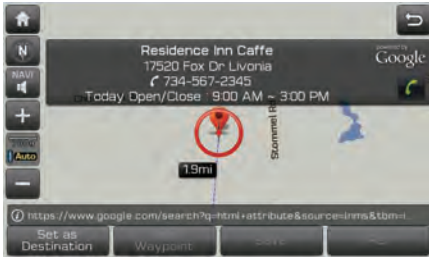
Enter the desired keywords and select the **Done** button.



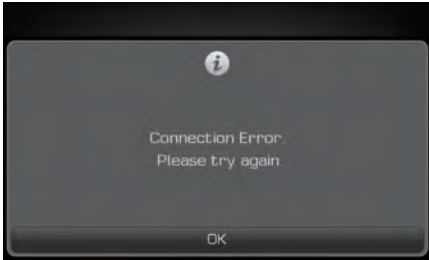
Searching is in progress.



If search succeeds, search results are displayed. Select one of the search result.



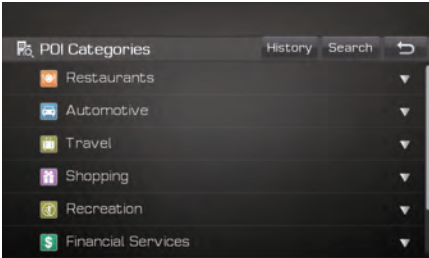
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.



If failed, the connection error message is displayed as above. Please try again.

### POI Categories

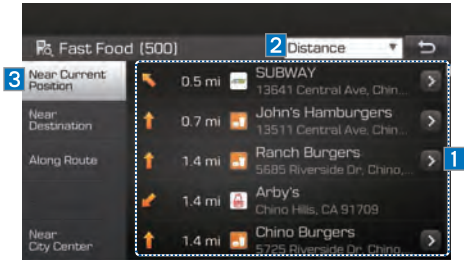
Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **POI Categories** icon.



Select the desired item.



Select the desired item in the sub-categories.

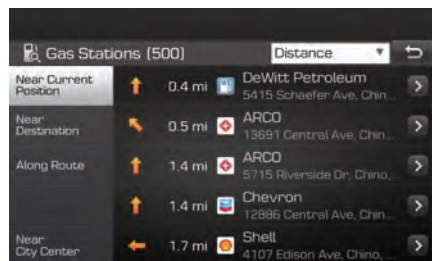
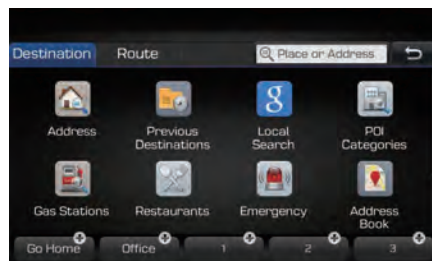


| Name | Description                                                                                                      |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select the desired destination among the searched items and add it as a waypoint.                                |
| 2    | Arrange in order of Distance and Name.                                                                           |
| 3    | Arrange in order of Near Current Position, Near Destination, Along Route, Near Scroll Mark and Near City Center. |

## Gas Stations

Search for gas stations.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Gas Stations** icon.

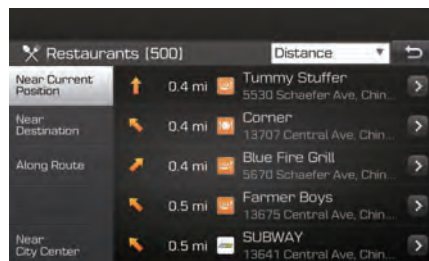


Select the desired destination among the searched items.

## Restaurants

Search restaurants.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Restaurants** icon.

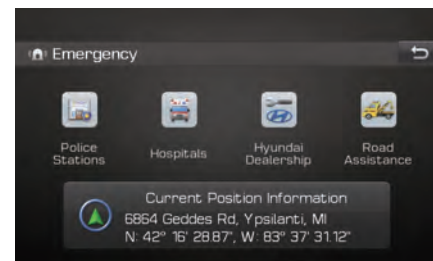


Select the desired destination among the searched items.

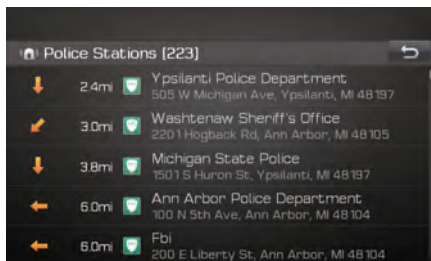
## Emergency

Search emergency facilities.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Emergency** icon.



Check the current location information and select the desired item in the sub-menu(ex. Police Station).

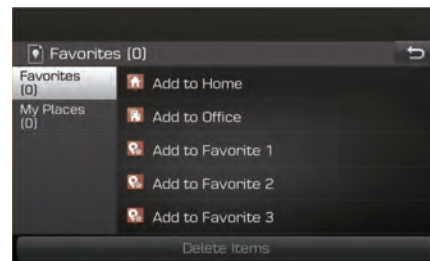


Select the desired destination among the searched items.

## Address Book

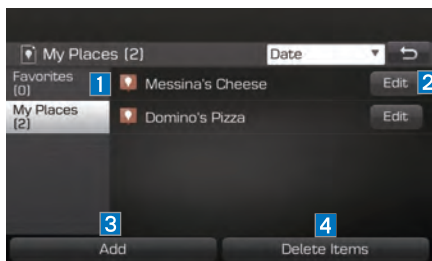
Search the destination with the address book.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Address Book** icon.



Select the desired group.

If you save addresses in the Favorites tab, you can set destinations easily by pressing the icons such as **Go Home** and **Office** at the bottom of the Destination menu.



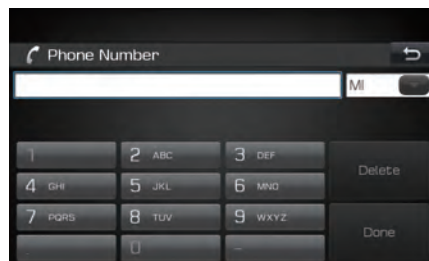
| Name | Description                                             |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select the desired destination from the searched items. |
| 2    | Edit the destination.                                   |
| 3    | Register a new destination.                             |
| 4    | Delete the desired item.                                |

## Phone Number

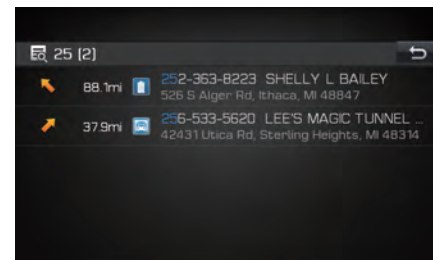
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Flick the screen in up direction to scroll to the bottom row of icons in the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Phone Number** to search POI by phone number.



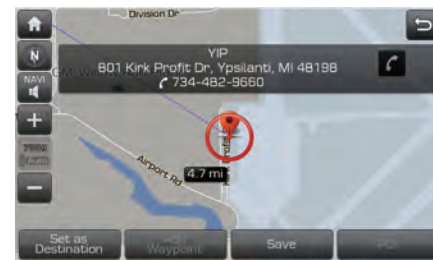
Search destination by phone number.



Type phone number to search. To search for a list of numbers based on a partial phone number entry, enter a few numbers and select **Done** to narrow the search results.



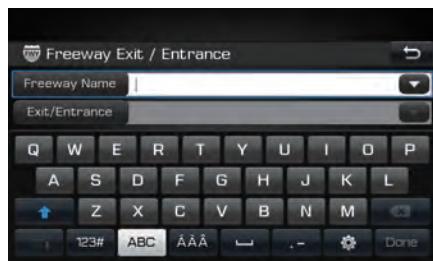
Select the desired destination among the searched items.



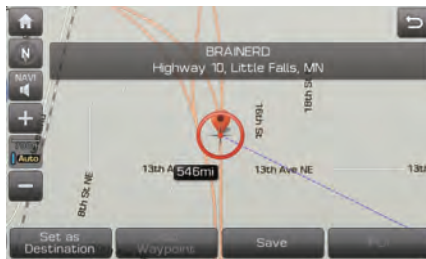
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Freeway Exit/Entrance

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Freeway Exit/Entrance** to search by freeway exit/entrance.



Type freeway name and exit/entrance.



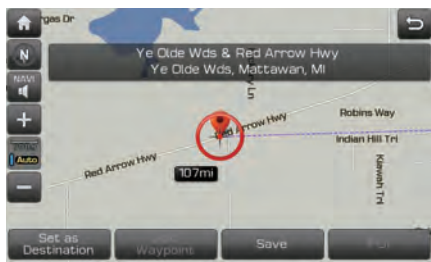
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Intersection

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Intersection** to search by intersection.



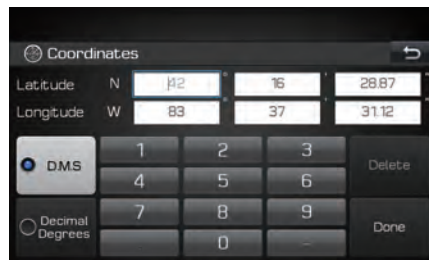
Type 1st Street name, the State, 2nd Street name.



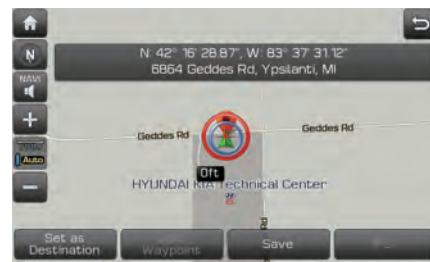
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Coordinates

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Coordinates** to search by coordinates.



There are two ways to search by coordinates (D.M.S or Decimal degrees). After typing coordinates, select the **Done** button to search.



Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

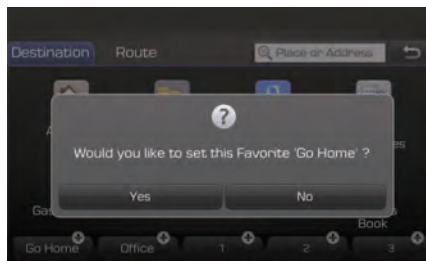
## Favorite places

Set the route using your favorite places.

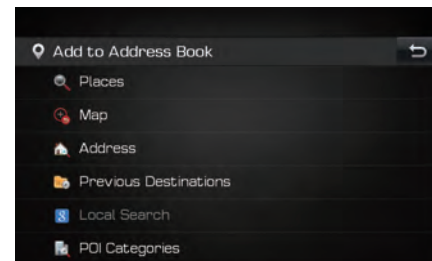
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select from favorite places



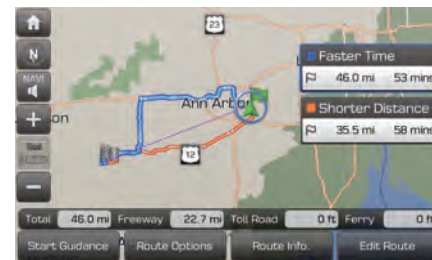
On the button where locations are not registered, the **+** icon is displayed. When a location is registered, the **+** button disappears and the buttons 1 to 3 are displayed as your favorite places.



Select the **Go Home** button then select the **Yes** button to set the Favorite 'Go Home'.



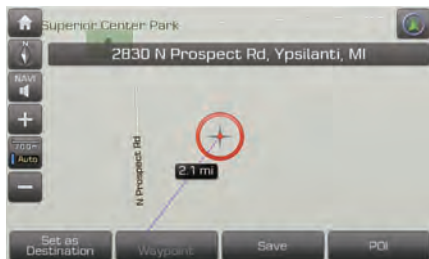
Register **Go Home** in various searching methods. Office, Special 1, Special 2, and Special 3 can also be set as a Favorite using the same steps.



Pressing any of the Favorite Place buttons will start the route guidance to the saved Favorite address.

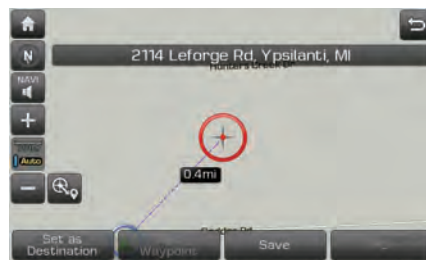
## Route Setting

The route can be set after searching for a destination.



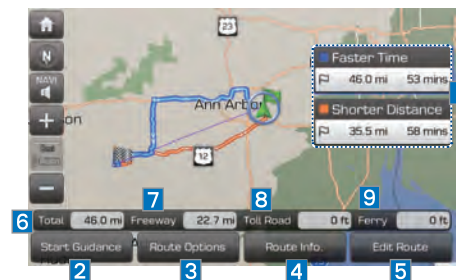
While the destination is set, the buttons **Set as Destination** and **Add Waypoint** appear. Select the desired button to change a destination or add a waypoint.

## Destination Setting



After searching the destination, select the **Set as Destination** button to set the location as a destination.

## All Routes

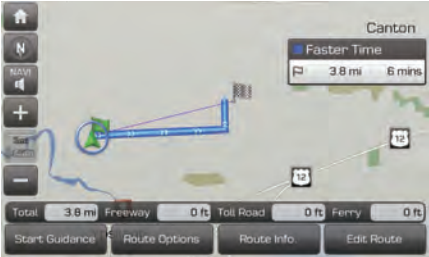


When the alternative routes option is enabled in navigation setting, two routing options are displayed based on faster time and shorter distance.

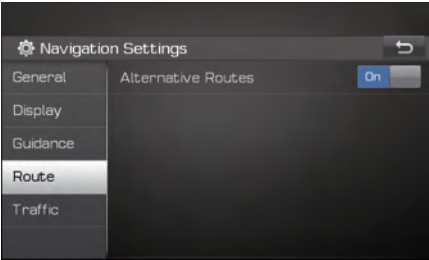
- **Faster Time:** Select time-optimized route, being the fastest roads.
- **Shorter Distance:** Select short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be calculated.

| Name                                                                                       | Description                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b>  | Display total distance, travel time. Select the desired route. |
| <b>2</b>  | Start the guidance with the route.                             |
| <b>3</b>  | Change the route option.                                       |
| <b>4</b>  | You can check route information.                               |
| <b>5</b>  | Edit the route.                                                |
| <b>6</b>   | Display total distance of the route                            |
| <b>7</b>   | Display length of freeway on the route                         |
| <b>8</b>   | Display length of toll road on the route                       |
| <b>9</b>   | Display length of Ferry route on the route                     |

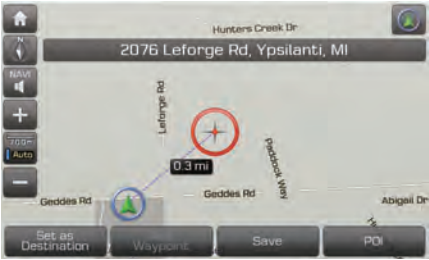
The route will be calculated using the option “Faster Time” by default.



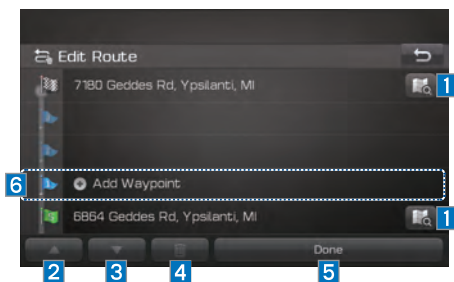
Alternative routes can be suggested if necessary, **SETUP** key. ▶ **Navigation** icon  
▶ Route ▶ Alternative: On



### Adding Waypoint

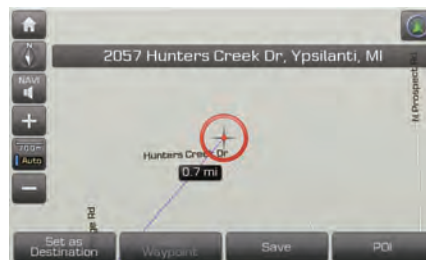


Select the **Add Waypoint** button to set the position as a waypoint and search the route.

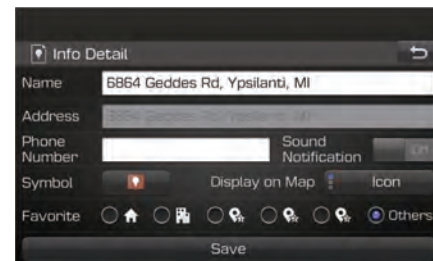


| Name                                                                                       | Description                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b>  | Display the selected point on the map screen. |
| <b>2</b>  | Move the selected item up.                    |
| <b>3</b>  | Move the selected item down.                  |
| <b>4</b>  | Delete the selected item.                     |
| <b>5</b>  | Select the button to finish editing.          |
| <b>6</b>  | Select the button to add waypoint.            |

## Registering Location



Select  button at the desired location to register the location.

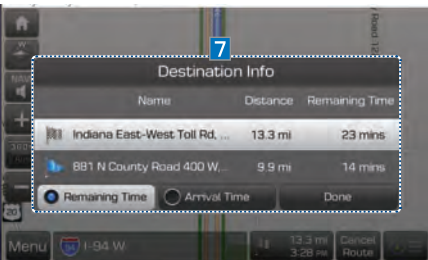
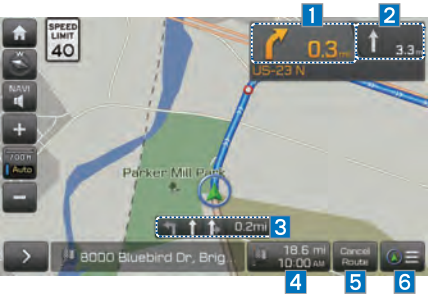


Enter the detailed information of the location to save.

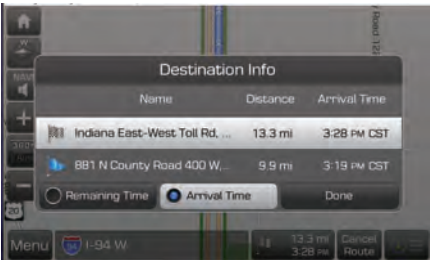
# Route Guidance

Show route guidance detailed information.

## Route Guidance Screen



**Remaining Time** : Display the time remaining by destination.

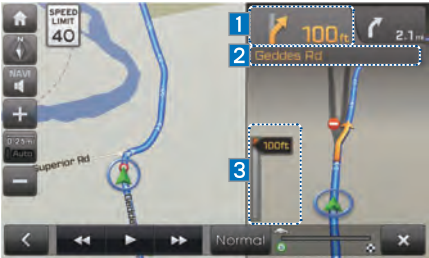


**Arrival Time** : Display the estimated time of arrival.

| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Displays the distance and direction to the first turn point.                                                                                                                |
| 2    | Displays the distance and direction to the second turn point.                                                                                                               |
| 3    | Displays the lane information at the current location. Display the recommended direction in white, travelable direction in white, and the non-travelable direction in grey. |

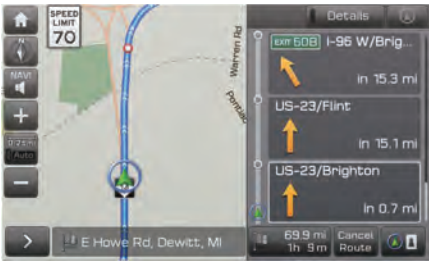
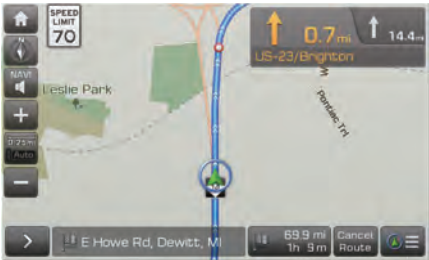
| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4    | Displays the distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival. Press the button to check the detailed information. If no way-point is set, you will see the remaining distance or estimated time of arrival in turn each time you click the button. |
| 5    | Cancel the route.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 6    | Change to preliminary guidance, TBT guidance, and zoom-on guidance screens.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 7    | Displays the destination information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

Split Screen during Route Guidance



Approaching the turning point, the detailed road and travel information is automatically displayed on the right side of the screen.

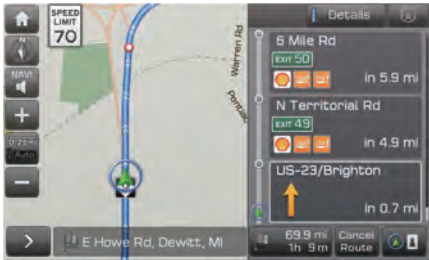
| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn Point: Display direction and shape to turn shortly</li><li>• Distance to turn : Display distance to next turn point</li></ul> |
| 2    | Road name to maneuver                                                                                                                                                      |
| 3    | Detail Distance Bar: Display distance to next turn point.                                                                                                                  |



Touch the  button to change display view mode as below.

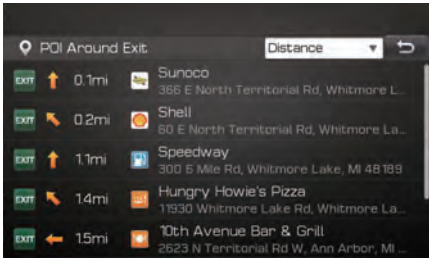
| Name                                                                              | Description                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Display the full map screen.                                         |
|  | Junction View, Split screen. (Active only when images are available) |
|  | Display Turn-by-turn information                                     |

 additional info can be displayed on Freeway



Additional info of Freeway exit or Rest area can be displayed by selecting the  button.

Detailed information for POIs around freeway exit is listed by pressing POI symbols.



## Route

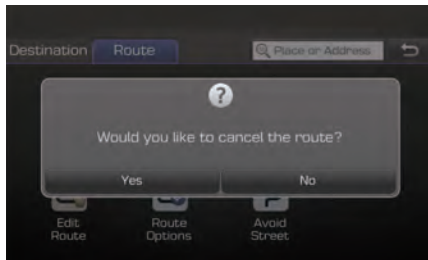
### Canceling Route

Cancel the route.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Cancel Route** icon.



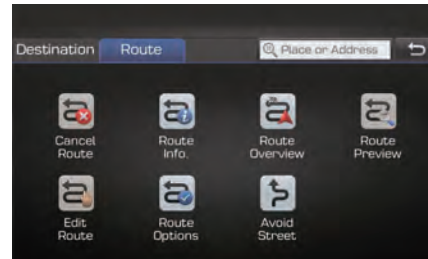
Select the **Cancel Route** icon.



Select the **Yes** button to cancel the route.

### Display Route Information

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Route Info.** icon.



Select the **Route Info.** icon.



Check the information on the map. Select the desired item to see the map information.

### Avoiding road

Click the **Avoid Street** button to avoid the street or road.



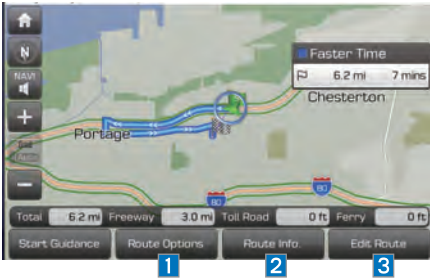
Check the desired item and select the **Done** button to finish.

## Route Overview

Check the information on route including the distance, estimated time, toll fees, etc. Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Route** tab. ▶ Select the **Route Overview** icon.



Select the **Route Overview** icon.



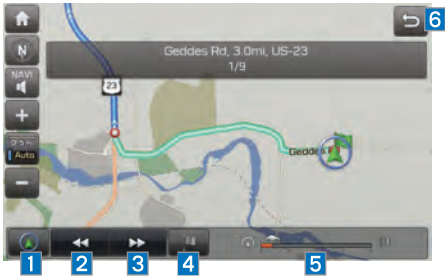
|   | Name          | Description                      |
|---|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Route Options | Change the search option.        |
| 2 | Route Info.   | You can check route information. |
| 3 | Edit Route    | Edit the current route.          |

## Route Preview

Check the detailed turn-by-turn list. Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Route** tab. ▶ Select the **Route Preview** icon.



Select the **Route Preview** icon.

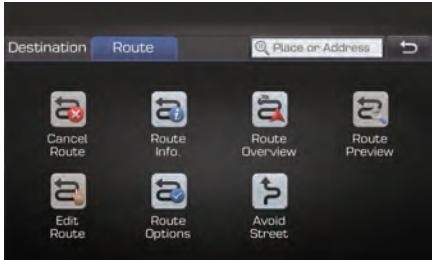


| Name | Description                                |
|------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Move to the departure location.            |
| 2    | Move to the previous maneuver.             |
| 3    | Move to the next maneuver.                 |
| 4    | Move to the destination location.          |
| 5    | Touch bar to move to the specific position |
| 6    | Close the route preview.                   |

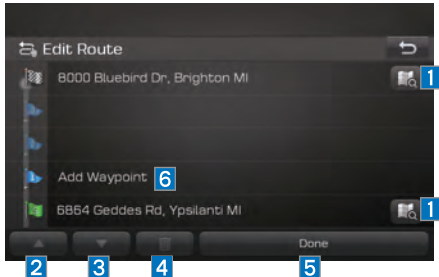
## Editing Route

Edit the current route.

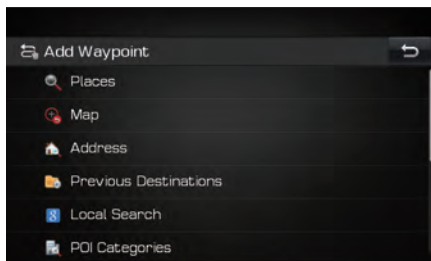
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Edit Route** icon.



Select the **Edit Route** icon.



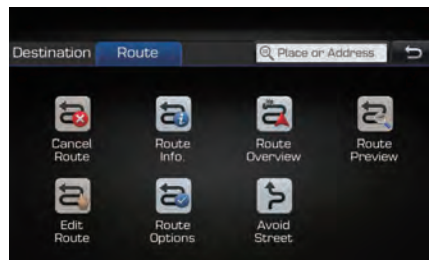
| Name | Description                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Display the selected point on the map screen. |
| 2    | Move the selected item up.                    |
| 3    | Move the selected item down.                  |
| 4    | Delete the selected item.                     |
| 5    | Press the button to finish editing.           |
| 6    | Press the button to add an waypoint.          |



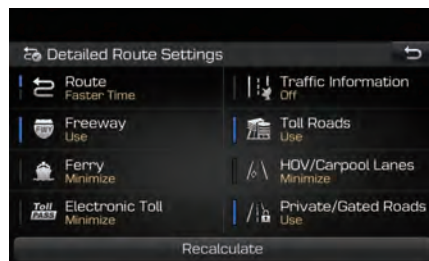
Add a waypoint through various searching methods.

## Route Options

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Route Options** icon.



Select the **Route Options** icon.



Determine the route options to guide the route.

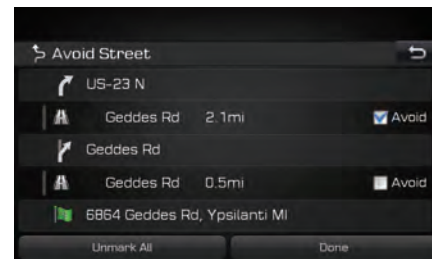
## Avoid Street

Search new route by avoiding the selected street(s).

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Avoid Street** icon.



Select the **Avoid Street** icon.

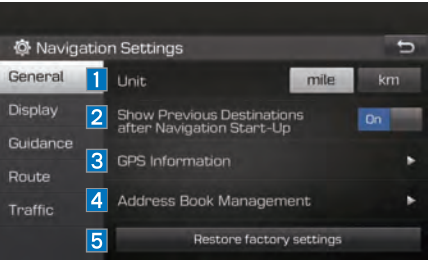


Select the **Done** button to plan new route after selecting the street(s) that you want to avoid.

# Navigation Settings

## General

Change general settings.



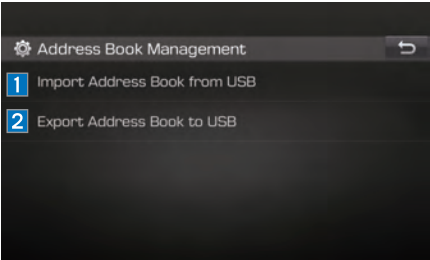
| Name | Description                                                                                                            |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Change the unit of <b>mile</b> , <b>km</b> .                                                                           |
| 2    | Select the <b>On</b> , <b>Off</b> button to change the previous destination view setting when starting the navigation. |
| 3    | Check the GPS information.                                                                                             |
| 4    | Import or export your Address Book using a USB.                                                                        |
| 5    | Select the <b>Restore factory settings</b> button to initialize.                                                       |



Select the **GPS Information** to display the detail GPS satellites information

| Name               | Description                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1 <b>Receiving</b> | Active when current position is being calculated |
| 2 <b>Speed</b>     | Display current speed of the vehicle             |
| 3 <b>Location</b>  | Display current position of the vehicle          |
| 4 <b>Elevation</b> | Display current elevation of the vehicle         |
| 5 <b>Time</b>      | Display time                                     |
| 6 <b>Date</b>      | Display date                                     |

## Address Book Management



In navigation screen, select **Address Book Management** . Press the desired category.

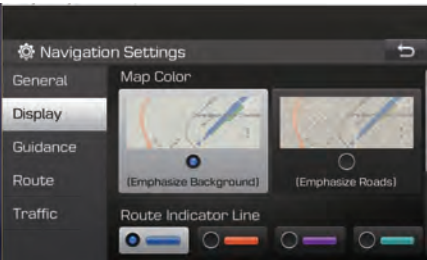
| Name                                  | Description                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 <b>Import Address Book from USB</b> | The latest data of Address Book which have been exported to a USB device will be imported to your navigation device. |
| 2 <b>Export Address Book to USB</b>   | Export the Address Book on your navigation device to a USB device.                                                   |

**⚠ WARNING**

- The amount of data available for importing to a USB device is limited based on the number of address book items supported by the navigation system.
- If the data stored on the USB device uses different coordinates than those used by the current system, the importing location may change.
- Please make sure that the address book have been successfully imported before use.
- Only USB devices formatted in FAT16/32 are supported.
- Certain USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.

**Display**

Change the display map settings.



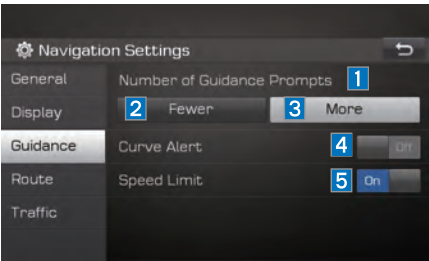
Change the map colors and the route guidance line colors.



Change the vehicle symbol.

**Guidance**

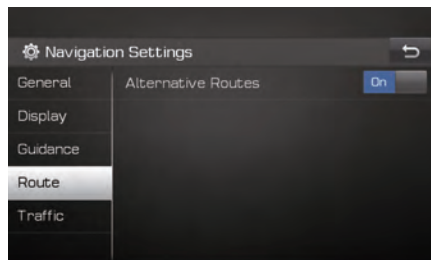
Change the guidance setting.



| Name | Description                                               |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Set the frequency of guidance                             |
| 2    | Route guidance is given less frequently.                  |
| 3    | Guidance will be provided frequently                      |
| 4    | Change whether to turn Curve Alert On and Off             |
| 5    | Change whether to show speed limit by pressing On and Off |

## Route

Change the route setting.



Select the **On** or **Off** button to change the **Alternative Routes** setting.

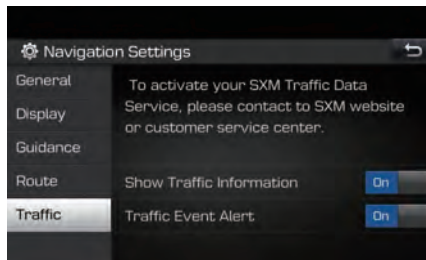
- Alternative on: Alternative routes will be suggested (depending on the route preference between “Faster time” and “Shorter Distance”).

### NOTICE

- Alternative routes can be shown only while the vehicle is not moving.
- 
- Alternative off: No alternative routes will be suggested. Guidance will start right after calculating with the route preference (Faster time or Shorter distance)

## Traffic

Change the traffic information setting.



Select the **On** or **Off** button to change the settings.

- Show Traffic Information On/Off: Select whether to display traffic information or not
- Traffic Event Pop-up Freeway On/Off: Select whether to display Pop-up message for traffic information on freeway
- Traffic Event Alert : You can turn traffic event pop-ups on/off.

# Troubleshooting

The current position as shown on the navigation may differ from the actual position under the following conditions.

| The following occurrences are not malfunctions :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When driving on Y-shaped roads with narrow angles the current position may be displayed in the opposite direction</li><li>• Within city streets, the current position may be displayed on the opposite side or on an off-road position</li><li>• When changing the zoom level from maximum to a different level, the current position may become displayed on a different road</li><li>• If the vehicle is loaded onto a ferry or a car transport vehicle, the current position may become stalled on the last position prior to loading</li><li>• When driving on a spiral-shaped road</li><li>• When driving in mountain regions with sharp turns or sudden brakes</li><li>• When entering a road after passing an underground parking structure, building parking structure, or roads with many rotations</li><li>• When driving in heavy traffic with frequent starts and stops</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When driving under slippery conditions, such as heavy sand, snow, etc.</li><li>• When driving on spiral-shaped roads</li><li>• When the tires have recently been replaced (Especially upon use of spare or studless tires).</li><li>• When using tires of improper size</li><li>• When the tire pressure for the 4 tires are different</li><li>• When the replacement tire is worn or used (Especially studless tires having passed a second season).</li><li>• When driving near high-rise buildings</li><li>• When a roof carrier has been installed</li><li>• When a long distance route is calculated while driving on an expressway In such cases, continued driving will automatically enable the system to conduct map matching or use updated GPS information to provide the current position (In such cases, up to several minutes may be required)</li></ul> |

Correct route guidance may not occur due to search conditions or driving position.

| The following occurrences are not malfunctions :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Guidance to go straight may be given while driving on a straight road</li><li>• Guidance may not be given even when having turned at an intersection</li><li>• There are certain intersections in which guidance may not occur</li><li>• A route guidance signaling for a u-turn may occur in some No u-turn intersections</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Route guidance signaling entrance into a No-entry zone may occur (No-entry zone, road under construction, etc.)</li><li>• Guidance may be given to a position that is not the actual destination if roads to reach the actual destination do not exist or are too narrow</li><li>• Faulty voice guidance may be given if the vehicle breaks away from the designated route. (e.g. if a turn is made at an intersection while the navigation provided guidance to go straight.)</li></ul> |

These situations may occur after conducting route calculation.

| The following occurrences are not malfunctions :                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Guidance may be given to a position differing from the current position when turning at an intersection</li><li>• When driving in high speeds, route recalculation may take a longer period of time</li><li>• Route guidance signaling for a u-turn may occur in some No u-turn intersections</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Route guidance signaling entrance into No-entry zone may occur. (No-entry zone, road under construction, etc.)</li><li>• Guidance may be given to a position removed from the actual destination if roads to reach the actual destination do not exist or are too narrow</li><li>• Faulty voice guidance may be given if the vehicle breaks away from the designated route (e.g. If a turn is made at an intersection while the navigation provided guidance to go straight.)</li></ul> |

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM.

This is a license agreement between you and Hyundai MnSoft, INC. including its affiliates ("COMPANY") regarding a copy of the COMPANY navigable map database together with associated software, media and explanatory printed documentation published by COMPANY (jointly the "Product"). The Product is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright and is subject to the following terms which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and COMPANY and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) (collectively, "Licensors") on the other hand.

By using the Product, you accept and agree to all terms and conditions in this End User License Agreement ("EULA"). IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, YOU MUST PROMPTLY EXIT THE PRODUCT OPERATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT USE OR ACCESS TO THE PRODUCT. YOU AGREE THAT YOUR RIGHTS UNDER THIS EULA MAY BE TERMINATED AUTOMATICALLY WITHOUT NOTICE IF YOU FAIL TO COMPLY WITH ANY TERM(S) OF THIS EULA.

## Terms and Conditions

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this Product together with COMPANY's authorized application for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may not assign this EULA or any of the rights or licenses granted under this EULA, except when installed in the system for which it was created.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by COMPANY, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use the Product (i) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (ii) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

COPYING OR USE OF THE PRODUCT EXCEPT AS PERMITTED BY THIS EULA IS UNAUTHORIZED AND IS COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT UNDER THE LAWS OF YOUR COUNTRY. IF YOU COPY OR USE THE PRODUCT WITHOUT COMPANY'S PERMISSION, EXCEPT AS PERMITTED BY THIS EULA, YOU ARE VIOLATING THE LAW AND LIABLE TO COMPANY AND ITS LICENSORS FOR DAMAGES, AND YOU MAY BE SUBJECT TO CRIMINAL PENALTIES.

THE PRODUCT MAY INCLUDE ENFORCEMENT TECHNOLOGY DESIGNED TO PREVENT (i) UNAUTHORIZED COPYING OF THE PRODUCT ONTO PHYSICAL STORAGE MEDIA OR VIA TRANSFER OVER THE INTERNET OR OTHER ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATION MEANS AND/OR (ii) ILLEGAL USAGE OF THE PRODUCT OTHER THAN BY A SPECIFICALLY AHTORIZED DEVICE. YOU AGREE THAT COMPANY MAY USE THESE MEASURES TO PROTECT COMPANY AND THE LICENSORS AGAINST COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT.

Uploads. The Product may provide functionality through which you are able to upload certain information about your use of the Product (collectively, "Uploads") to COMPANY's servers or receive other services from COMPANY (collectively, the "Services"). If you use such functionality, you authorize COMPANY to retain your Uploads on its servers. COMPANY will have no obligation to provide any Services, may change the form and nature of any Services at any time with or without notice to you, will have no liability whatsoever to you for any failure of the Product or Services to transmit your Uploads to or from COMPANY's servers, may cease providing any Services at any time with or without notice to you, and will have no obligation to retain your Uploads (or any other materials you may provide to COMPANY) on its servers or return your Uploads (or any other materials you may provide to COMPANY) to you before deleting them from its servers.

Storage. The Product may provide functionality through which you are able to store information (such as images) on the device on which you are using the Product. COMPANY will have no liability whatsoever to you or any third party for any failure of the Product to store any such information on such device.

Personal Information. By using the Product, you agree to the collection, retention and processing of your personal data (including the location of your mobile device) by COMPANY and to the storage and processing of such personal information on computers located outside of the country in which you reside. Even though COMPANY has taken steps intended to protect your personal information from being intercepted, accessed, used, or disclosed by unauthorized persons, COMPANY cannot fully eliminate security risks associated with your personal information and cannot guarantee that its systems will not be breached. See [\*] for additional information regarding COMPANY's use of your personal information.

**WARNING. THE PRODUCT REFLECTS REALITY AS EXISTING BEFORE YOU RECEIVED THE PRODUCT AND IT COMPRISES DATA AND INFORMATION FROM GOVERNMENT OTHER SOURCES. ACCORDINGLY, THE PRODUCT MAY CONTAIN INACCURATE OR INCOMPLETE INFORMATION DUE TO THE PASSAGE OF TIME, CHANGING CIRCUMSTANCES, SOURCES USED AND THE NATURE OF COLLECTING COMPREHENSIVE GEOGRAPHIC PRODUCT, ANY OF WHICH MAY LEAD TO INCORRECT RESULTS. THE PRODUCT AND SERVICES MAY NOT TO BE USED FOR SAFETY OF LIFE APPLICATIONS, OR FOR ANY OTHER APPLICATION IN WHICH THE ACCURACY OR RELIABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR SERVICES COULD CREATE A SITUATION WHERE PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH MAY OCCUR. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO CONFIGURE THE PRODUCT OR INPUT INFORMATION WHILE DRIVING. FAILURE TO PAY FULL ATTENTION TO THE OPERATION OF YOUR VEHICLE COULD RESULT IN DEATH, SERIOUS INJURY, OR PROPERTY DAMAGE. BY USING THE PRODUCT, YOU ASSUME ALL RESPONSIBILITY AND RISK.**

Disclaimer of Warranty. The Product is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. SUBJECT TO THE APPLICABLE LAWS, COMPANY AND THE LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES, REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, ARISING BY LAW OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, CONTENT, QUALITY, ACCURACY, COMPLETENESS, EFFECTIVENESS, RELIABILITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, USEFULNESS, USE OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM THE PRODUCT, OR THAT THE PRODUCT OR SERVER WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT ERRORS IN THE PRODUCT OR NONCONFORMITY TO ITS DOCUMENTATION CAN OR WILL BE CORRECTED. YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION ARE A MATERIAL INDUCEMENT AND CONSIDERATION TO COMPANY AND THE LICENSORS TO GRANT THE LICENSE CONTAINED IN THIS EULA AND TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ACCESS TO THE SERVICES.

Limitation of Liability: TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE APPLICABLE LAWS, COMPANY AND THE LICENSORS SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, INCURRED BY YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY WHICH MAY ARISE IN CONNECTION WITH OR RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE PRODUCT; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF DATA, PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT, ANY DEFECT IN THE PRODUCT, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF COMPANY OR THE LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES AND NOTWITHSTANDING THE FAILURE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY PROVIDED HEREIN.

Exclusions. Some jurisdictions do not allow certain warranty exclusions or the limitation or exclusion of liability, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you. To the extent that COMPANY may not, as a matter of applicable law, disclaim any implied warranty or limit its liabilities, the scope and duration of such warranty and the extent of COMPANY's liability shall be the minimum permitted under such applicable law. The disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability set forth in this EULA does not affect or prejudice your statutory rights where you have acquired the Product otherwise than in the course of business.

Third-Party Copyright Notices. The third-party sourced data has been incorporated into or made a part of the Product and is being sub-licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of this EULA. In this regard, you shall not remove or tamper with any intellectual property rights notice attached or used in relation to data supplied by the Licensors.

Entire Agreement. This EULA is the entire agreement between COMPANY (and the Licensors) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all previous written or oral communications or documents (including, if you are obtaining an update, any agreement that may have been included with an earlier version of the Product) with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. This EULA shall be governed by the laws of the jurisdiction in which you reside at the date of acquisition of the Product. Should you at that moment reside outside the European Union or Switzerland, the law of the jurisdiction within the European Union or Switzerland where you acquired the Product shall apply. In all other cases, or if the jurisdiction where you acquired the Product cannot be defined, the laws of the Republic of Korea shall apply. This EULA will not be governed by the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods. The courts competent at your place of residence at the time you acquired the Product shall have jurisdiction over any dispute arising out of, or relating to this EULA, without prejudice to COMPANY's right to bring claims at your then current place of residence.

Export Control. You agree not to export or re-export from anywhere any part of the Product in any form except in compliance with applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce.

Miscellaneous. If any provision of this EULA is found to be invalid or unenforceable, it will be enforced to the extent permissible and the remainder of this EULA will remain in full force and effect. Failure by COMPANY to prosecute any right with respect to a default hereunder will not constitute a waiver by COMPANY of the right to enforce rights with respect to the same or any other breach. No refunds or replacements will be permitted on damaged Product.

U.S. Government End Users. If the Product is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States Government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States Government, this Product and related documentation are “Commercial Items” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101. This Product and related documentation are licensed to the United States Government end users (a) only as “Commercial Items” and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users in accordance with this EULA, and each copy of Product delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

**NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: Hyundai MnSoft, Inc.  
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: 74 Wonhyo-ro, Yongsan-gu,  
Seoul 140-711, Republic of Korea

This Product and related documentation are commercial items as defined in  
FAR 2.101 and is subject to this EULA under which this Product is provided.

© 2013 Hyundai MnSoft. All rights reserved

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify COMPANY prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Product.

End-User Terms Required by HERE. The Product utilizes map data that COMPANY licenses from HERE and the following copyright notices apply to such map data (the “HERE Data”): © 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The HERE Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2010. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®.

The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The HERE Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

Austria: © Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen

Croatia, Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine: © EuroGeographics

France: source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO®

Germany: Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen

Great Britain: Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010, and Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010.

Greece: Copyright Geomatics Ltd.

Italy: La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.

Norway: Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority

Portugal: Source: IgeoE – Portugal

Spain: Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG

Sweden: Based upon electronic data Ó National Land Survey Sweden

Switzerland: Topografische Grundlage: Ó Bundesamt für Landestopographie

United Kingdom: Contains public sector information licensed under the Open Government Licence v1.0 (see for the license <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/>) and is adapted from data from the office for National Statistics licensed under the Open Government Licence v.1.0.

Israel: © Survey of Israel data source

Jordan: © Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

Mozambique: Certain Data for Mozambique provided by Cenacarta © 20XX by Cenacarta

Réunion: source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®

End-User Terms Required by ZENRIN. The Product utilizes map data that COMPANY licenses from ZENRIN and the following copyright notices apply to such map data (the "ZENRIN Data"):

Europe: Junction View Data provided by ZENRIN CO., LTD. Copyright © 20XX, All Rights Reserved.

Europe: Junction View Data and Exit View Data provided by ZENRIN CO., LTD. Copyright © 20XX, All Rights Reserved.

North America: Junction View Data provided by ZENRIN USA, INC. Copyright © 20XX, All Rights Reserved; Junction View Data fourni par ZENRIN USA, INC. Copyright © 20XX. Tous droits réservés; Las imágenes de las rutas alternas son proveídas por ZENRIN USA, INC. Copyright © 20XX. Todos los derechos reservados.

### **Copyright for Brand Icon**

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

### **Copyright for Junction View**

Junction View Data provided by ZENRIN USA, INC. Copyright(C) 20XX, All rights Reserved.

### **About Map Updates**

- You can contact your Dealers of Genesis Brand Products or Call MnSOFT at 1-888-757-0010.

### **Information**

- This product requires regular updates for new functions and map updates. Updating may require up to 1 hour depending on the data size.
- Turning off the power or ejecting the SD card during the update process may result in damage to the system. Make sure to keep the ignition on and wait until updating is complete.

### **CAUTION**

- Please use only the SD card that was included with the vehicle purchase.
- The use of an uncertified SD card may result in damage to the system due to heat related deformation.
- Product malfunctions caused by the use of an uncertified cards shall not be covered within the product warranty.
- Repeatedly connecting/disconnecting the SD card in a short period of time may cause damage to the device.

## part.6 Voice Recognition

What is Voice Recognition?

Precautions Required for Successful Voice Recognition

Starting/Ending and Setting Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition Screen Overview

Voice Commands

Siri Eyes Free

# Voice Recognition

## What is Voice Recognition?

The voice recognition feature operates the multimedia system by recognizing voice commands and enables hands-free operation of the system while you are driving your car.

Not all possible voice commands are recognized by the system due to technological limitations. To make up for these limitations, the system displays the voice commands that are available for you to use.

There are errors in communication between people. Likewise, voice recognition sometimes misunderstands your voice command in some circumstances. If this happens, either check the screen for the available options and say the command again, or manually select and press the button for the corresponding command on the screen.

## Precautions Required for Successful Voice Recognition

1. Voice recognition supports only the commands that are displayed on the screen and written in the User's Guide.
2. To ensure the correct recognition and execution of your command, say your command when you hear the beep after a voice prompt.
3. Voice recognition automatically ends if:
  - 1) A call is incoming or outgoing
  - 2) A media device (USB or iPod, etc.) is connected or disconnected
  - 3) The rear view camera is operated
  - 4) The car engine starts or stops
  - 5) A system key, such as **RADIO** key or **MEDIA** key is selected
  - 6) An emergency occurs, for example re-searching for the route after the navigation route has been lost
4. The microphone used for the voice recognition system is located in the headliner directly above the driver's head. To make your commands better understood, keep your body straight in the driver's seat when speaking the command.
5. Speaking naturally and clearly will ensure better recognition of your voice commands.
6. In the following cases voice recognition will be affected by ambient noise.
  - 1) The sound of the wind if any window or the sun roof is open.
  - 2) High speed blower from the air vents. Set climate control to blow lower than level 3.
  - 3) Vibrations from passing through a tunnel.
  - 4) Vibrations from driving on an uneven road.
  - 5) Storms and heavy rain.

# Starting/Ending and Setting Voice Recognition

## Starting Voice Recognition

Press the  key briefly (less than 0.8 seconds) on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition.



## Ending Voice Recognition

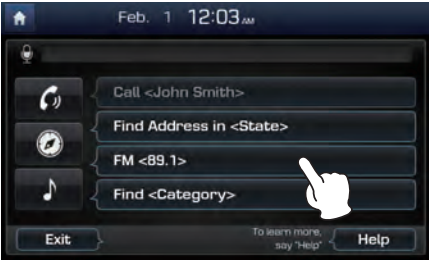
1. Select "Exit" to the left of the bottom to end voice recognition.
2. Press and hold (more than 0.8 seconds) the  key on the steering wheel control to end voice recognition.



## Combining Voice Recognition with On-Screen Commands

After pressing the  key, say a command after the beep. The voice recognition system will execute the desired operation after understanding the command. Alternatively, you may touch any of the corresponding commands on the screen while the Voice Recognition system is in operation.

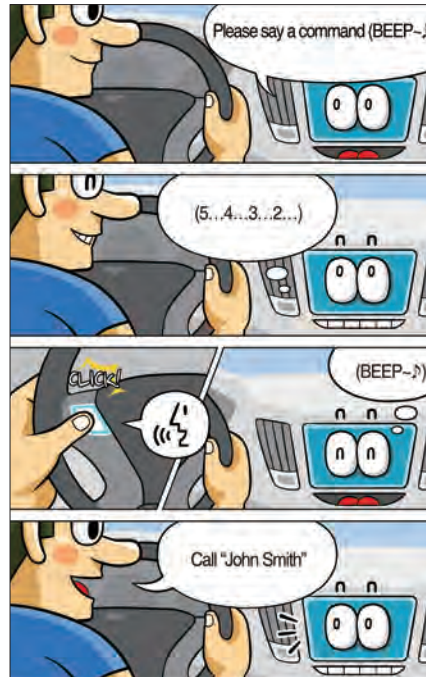
Combining voice recognition with available on-screen commands is useful when the system is taking longer than expected or the voice command did not execute as desired.



## Extending the Listening Time

When the system is waiting for your command, after the voice prompt and beep have been heard, if you press the voice recognition icon (less than 0.8 seconds), then the beep will sound again and standby mode will restart.

When activated, voice recognition waits for your command for 5 seconds. If you say nothing for 5 seconds, a voice prompt will ask for your command again.



---

## Skipping Prompt Messages

---

When you hear the prompt, "Please say a command," from the system, press the voice recognition icon on the steering wheel remote control to skip the message and go directly to listening mode to say your command.

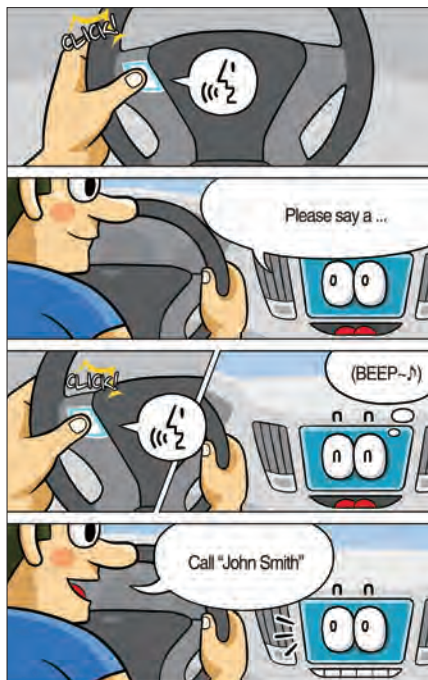
This results in faster operation when you feel the message is too long or you already know the command to use.

---

### **i** Information

---

- Refer to Part 9 for instructions on how to change the Voice Recognition Settings.
- 



---

## Adjusting Voice Recognition Volume

---

During voice recognition, rotate the volume knob to adjust the message volume.



# Voice Recognition Screen Overview



| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Representative Commands | Display the representative commands.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2 Not available command   | Displays commands that are not available due to a failure in meeting the conditions for using them and thus need additional settings. The conditions required for using them will be described briefly under each command. |

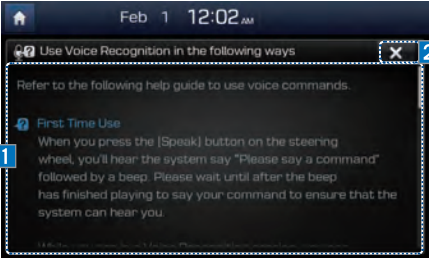
| Name                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 Voice recognition status icons          |  Standby<br> Voice guidance<br> Voice command process |
| 4 User's speaking volume being recognized | Displays the voice command volume in real time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 5 Recognized results                      | Displays the voice recognition result.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 6 Help                                    | Displays all available help commands in a tree format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 7 Exit                                    | Ends the voice recognition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## Help Display



| Name                           | Description                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Command list                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Shows the available commands.</li><li>Select or say a command to display additional commands in detail.</li></ul> |
| 2 How to use for selected item | This section shows how to use voice recognition for the selected item.                                                                                  |
| 3 How to use in general        | This section displays how to use voice recognition in general.                                                                                          |

# Instructions for Using Voice Recognition



## Information

- In the instructions screen, no voice is recognized, so you must manually issue commands. Because the instructions screen displays a lot of content, you can not view it while driving for safety precautions.

| Name                 | Description                                                    |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Detail instruction | This section describes how to use voice recognition in detail. |
| 2 Close button       | Closes the screen and restarts voice recognition.              |

# Voice Commands

## Types of Commands

Voice recognition commands are classified as "Global Commands" and "Local Commands".

- 1. Global Commands (●): Commands that can be used immediately after activating voice recognition.
- 2. Local Commands (○): Commands that can be used when a multimedia, navigation, or Bluetooth call is running, or displayed on the screen, after activating voice recognition.

## Call Commands

- \* Check the following before using call commands:
- 1. Voice commands related to phone calls can be used after connecting a Bluetooth device.
  - 2. To call a person, for example "Call <John Smith>" whose name is listed in Contacts, you must first download the Contacts list. For details on downloading contacts, see "Part 3. Bluetooth > Chapter 3. Bluetooth Phone > 3.10 Contacts".
  - 3. After downloading the Bluetooth contacts, it will take some time to convert the Contacts into voice data during which time you cannot make a call by name yet. The time it takes to convert voice data may vary depending on the number of Contacts downloaded on the phone.

| Command |                       | Operation                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Call                  | Displays downloaded Contacts, after this you can make a call by saying the name.                                                                                            |
| ●       | Call <Name>           | You can directly call a person by <Name> in the downloaded Contacts.                                                                                                        |
| ●       | Call <Name> on Mobile | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Mobile" in the downloaded Contacts.<br>e.g.) Call "John Smith" on Mobile                              |
| ●       | Call <Name> at Work   | You can call a person directly <Name> to the number that is saved as "Work" in the downloaded Contacts.<br>e.g.) Call "John Smith" at Work                                  |
| ●       | Call <Name> at Home   | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Home" in the downloaded Contacts.<br>e.g.) Call "John Smith" at Home                                  |
| ●       | Call <Name> on Other  | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Other" than "Mobile, Home, or Office" in the downloaded Contacts.<br>e.g.) Call "John Smith" on Other |
| ●       | Dial Number           | Displays a screen where you can say a phone number to dial.                                                                                                                 |
| ●       | Dial <Phone #>        | You can directly say the number to call.<br>e.g.) Dial 111 555 1234                                                                                                         |

## Navigation Commands

\* Check the following before you use navigation commands:

1. Search for and find addresses located in the state or province your car is currently in.

If you want to search in another state, say the name of state/province and then look it up.

Find Address is classified by states/provinces to provide you with faster service.

2. Some commands such as "Cancel Route" are available only when the destination is fixed.

| Command |                         | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Find Address in <State> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Finds the address in &lt;State&gt; and sets it as the destination.<br/>e.g.) Find Address in California</li> <li>• To find an address, you should say "House Number → Street → City"<br/>e.g.) 300 (Three Zero Zero) Main Street, Almond</li> </ul> |
| ●       | Find Address            | Finds the address and sets it as the destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ●       | Find POI                | Find the points of interest. After this command, you can find the name of a location step-by-step.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ●       | Find <Category>         | Immediately finds <Category>. For detail of <Category>, see "Find <Category>" list.<br>e.g.) Find "Banks"                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Command |                          | Operation                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Map                      | Moves to the current position on the navigation map                                                                                                                         |
| ●       | Previous Points          | Displays a list combining Previous Destinations, Previous Searches, and Previous Starting Points all together.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number. |
| ●       | Previous Destinations    | Displays a list of recent destinations that you can return to by saying the number in the list.                                                                             |
| ●       | Previous Searches        | Displays a list of recent searches, where you can set a destination by saying the number in the list.                                                                       |
| ●       | Previous Starting Points | Displays a list of recent starting points that you can return to by saying the number in the list.                                                                          |
| ●       | Traffic Information      | Moves to the Traffic Information menu screen.                                                                                                                               |
| ●       | Go Home                  | Set the destination to your home.<br>Your home must first be set in the Navigation system.                                                                                  |
| ●       | Go to Office             | Set the destination to your office/work.<br>Your office/work must first be set in the Navigation system.                                                                    |

| Command |                             | Operation                                                                                                                                      |
|---------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Turn Guidance On            | Turns on the voice guidance system.                                                                                                            |
| ●       | Turn Guidance Off           | Turns off the voice guidance system.                                                                                                           |
| ●       | Zoom All the Way Out        | Zooms out from the navigation map to the fullest.                                                                                              |
| ●       | Zoom All the Way In         | Zooms in on the navigation map to the fullest.                                                                                                 |
| ●       | Cancel Route                | Cancels the route to the fixed destination and exits guidance.                                                                                 |
| ●       | Destination Information     | Tells you the remaining distance and time to your destination.                                                                                 |
| ●       | Route Options               | Restarts the route to your destination. You can then select either “Faster Time” or “Shorter Distance”.                                        |
| ●       | Find Faster Time Route      | Starts a new route to your destination that will take the least amount of time.                                                                |
| ●       | Find Shorter Distance Route | Starts a new route to your destination that will use the shortest distance.                                                                    |
| ●       | Emergency Services          | Displays a list of nearest Police Station, Hospital, Dealership, or Road Assistance. You can then set a destination by saying the list number. |
| ●       | Police Station              | Displays a list of the nearest police stations. You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                                      |

| Command |                 | Operation                                                                                                           |
|---------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Hospital        | Displays a list of the nearest hospitals. You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                 |
| ●       | Dealership      | Displays a list of the nearest car dealerships. You can then set a destination by saying the list number.           |
| ●       | Road Assistance | Displays a list of the nearest road assistance locations. You can then set a destination by saying the list number. |
| ●       | Show Route      | Displays a map overview of the entire route to your destination.                                                    |

## Radio Commands

| Command |                                | Operation                                                                                                                          |
|---------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Radio                          | Plays the most recent radio channels from FM, AM, and SiriusXM™.                                                                   |
| ●       | FM                             | Plays FM radio.                                                                                                                    |
| ●       | FM<br><87.5~107.9>             | Tunes to FM <Frequency> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) FM 87.5: FM eighty seven point five                                    |
| ●       | SiriusXM                       | Plays SiriusXM™ radio.                                                                                                             |
| ●       | SiriusXM<br>Channel<br><0~999> | Tunes to SiriusXM™ Channel <Channel Number> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) SiriusXM Channel 23: SiriusXM Channel twenty three |
| ●       | AM                             | Plays AM radio.                                                                                                                    |
| ●       | AM <530~1710>                  | Tunes to AM <Frequency> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) AM 530: AM five thirty                                                 |
| ○       | Preset <1~18>                  | Tunes to your preset stations (1 to 18).                                                                                           |
| ○       | Channel<br><0~999>             | In SiriusXM™ Radio mode, turns on the <Channel Number> that you say.                                                               |

## Media Commands

\* Check the following before you use media commands.

1. If no media is connected or if no playable files exist at the time when you use these commands, a voice message will tell you that this is not available.
2. If you say the name of the media that is currently playing again, then that media will continue playing.  
e.g.) Saying “USB” while USB content is playing.

| Command |                 | Operation                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Music           | Continues the last media you played.                                                                                                                        |
| ●       | CD              | CD Plays the content of the CD currently inserted.                                                                                                          |
| ●       | iPod            | Plays the iPod currently connected. This will work the same when an iPhone is connected. If a USB is connected, then it will be played instead of the iPod. |
| ●       | USB             | Plays the music on the USB currently connected.<br>If an iPod is connected, then the iPod will be played instead of the USB.                                |
| ●       | Bluetooth Audio | Plays the music on the Bluetooth phone currently connected.<br>This may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth connection status.                      |
| ●       | AUX             | Plays external devices that are currently connected.                                                                                                        |
| ●       | My Music        | Plays My Music files stored in the system.                                                                                                                  |

## 1. Audio CD Command

| Command |                 | Operation                                                                                                        |
|---------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ○       | Play            | Plays a paused track.<br>Maintains the current settings during playback.                                         |
| ○       | Pause           | Pauses a track that is currently playing.<br>Maintains current settings while paused during playback.            |
| ○       | Track<br><1~99> | Plays a desired track number.                                                                                    |
| ○       | Shuffle         | Plays tracks or files randomly.<br>Maintains current settings during shuffled playback.                          |
| ○       | Shuffle Off     | Cancels Shuffle and plays tracks sequentially.<br>Maintains current settings during sequential playback.         |
| ○       | Repeat          | Plays the current track repeatedly.<br>Maintains the current settings during repeat playback.                    |
| ○       | Repeat Off      | Cancels Repeat and plays multiple tracks or files.<br>Maintains current settings during multiple track playback. |

## 2. MP3 CD/USB Music/iPod/My Music Command

| Command |             | Operation                                                                                                        |
|---------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ○       | Play        | Plays a selected file.<br>Maintains the current settings during playback.                                        |
| ○       | Pause       | Pauses a file that is playing.<br>Maintains current settings while paused during playback.                       |
| ○       | Shuffle     | Plays tracks or files randomly.<br>Maintains current settings during shuffled playback.                          |
| ○       | Shuffle Off | Cancels Shuffle and plays tracks sequentially.<br>Maintains current settings during sequential playback.         |
| ○       | Repeat      | Plays the current track or file repeatedly.<br>Maintains the current settings during repeat playback.            |
| ○       | Repeat Off  | Cancels Repeat and plays multiple tracks or files.<br>Maintains current settings during multiple track playback. |

3. Bluetooth audio/AUX command

For Bluetooth audio and external devices (AUX), local commands are unavailable, including Play, Pause, Repeat and Shuffle.

**Other Commands List**  
**(Commands used in List/Help)**

| Command |                             | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Help                        | Moves to the voice recognition help screen. All available commands can then be identified and used.                                                                                          |
| ○       | Line 1~5<br>(One~Five)      | When you cannot select a certain name, such as in Call History, you can select it using numbers. Simple numbers can be recognized, such as “One” or “Two”.                                   |
| ○       | Yes/No                      | When voice recognition is activated, this command is used when an answer is requested for a confirmation question.                                                                           |
| ○       | Previous Page/<br>Next Page | When five or more searched items are listed, you can move to the previous or next page using a voice command.                                                                                |
| ○       | Manual Input                | When Dial or POI Name search results are displayed, this command is used to search manually, rather than to search with a voice command. Voice recognition stops after this command is used. |
| ○       | Go Back                     | Moves to the previous screen.                                                                                                                                                                |
| ●       | Exit                        | Ends the voice recognition.                                                                                                                                                                  |

## “Find <Category>” List

Navigation location names can be changed after an update.

### 1. Restaurants

| Restaurants           |
|-----------------------|
| Fast Food Restaurants |
| Arby's                |
| Boston Market         |
| BURGER KING           |
| Carl's Jr             |
| Chick-fil-A           |
| Chipotle              |
| Church's Chicken      |
| Dairy Queen           |
| Firehouse Subs        |
| Fleming's             |
| Hardee's              |
| In-N-Out Burger       |
| IHOP                  |
| Jack in the Box       |
| Jimmy John's          |
| KFC                   |
| Little Caesars        |
| Long John Silver's    |
| McAlister's Deli      |

|                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| McDonald's                       |
| Panda Express                    |
| Panera Bread                     |
| Popeyes                          |
| Quiznos Sub                      |
| Schlotzsky's                     |
| SONIC                            |
| SUBWAY                           |
| Taco Bell                        |
| Taco John's                      |
| Waffle House                     |
| Wendy's                          |
| White Castle                     |
| American Restaurants             |
| Applebee's                       |
| Bahama Breeze                    |
| Boston's Restaurant & Sports Bar |
| Cheeseburger in Paradise         |
| Chili's Grill & Bar              |
| Cool River                       |
| Denny's                          |

|                               |
|-------------------------------|
| Frisch's Big Boy              |
| Good Eats                     |
| Ill Forks                     |
| Lee Roy Selmon's              |
| Lone Star Steakhouse & Saloon |
| Longhorn Steakhouse           |
| Luckys Cafe                   |
| Outback Steakhouse            |
| Ponderosa                     |
| Publix                        |
| Seasons 52                    |
| Sheetz                        |
| Silver Fox                    |
| Texas Roadhouse               |
| TGI Friday's                  |
| The Capital Grille            |
| French Restaurants            |
| Italian Restaurants           |
| Bonefish Grill                |
| Carrabba's Italian Grill      |
| Chuck E Cheese's              |

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| Domino's                   |
| Olive Garden               |
| Papa John's                |
| Papa Murphy's              |
| Pizza 73                   |
| Pizza Hut                  |
| pizza pizza                |
| Continental Restaurants    |
| Mexican Restaurants        |
| Cantina Laredo             |
| Chevys                     |
| El Chico                   |
| Japanese Restaurants       |
| Chinese Restaurants        |
| PF Chang's China Bistro    |
| Korean Restaurants         |
| Vegetarian Restaurants     |
| Seafood Restaurants        |
| Red Lobster                |
| Latin American Restaurants |

## 2. Automotive

| Restaurants         |
|---------------------|
| Asian Restaurants   |
| African Restaurants |
| Coffee Shops        |
| Starbucks           |
| Dunkin' Donuts      |
| Tim Hortons         |
| Other Restaurants   |
| Auntie Anne's       |
| Baskin-Robbins      |
| Haagen-Dazs         |
| Hooters             |
| Roy's               |
| TCBY                |
| VAN DER VALK        |

| Automotive            |
|-----------------------|
| Genesis Dealerships   |
| Gas Stations          |
| 76                    |
| ampm                  |
| ARCO                  |
| BP                    |
| Canadian Tire         |
| Casey's General Store |
| Cenex                 |
| Chevron               |
| CITGO                 |
| Conoco                |
| Esso                  |
| Exxon                 |
| Fleetfuels            |
| GetGo                 |
| Giant Gasoline        |
| GTO                   |
| Gulf                  |
| Husky                 |
| Ingles Gas Express    |
| Marathon              |

|                          |
|--------------------------|
| Martin's Gasoline        |
| Meijer                   |
| Mobil                    |
| Murphy Express           |
| Murphy USA               |
| Petro Stopping Centers   |
| PETRO-CANADA             |
| Phillips 66              |
| Pioneer                  |
| QuikTrip                 |
| Rutter's                 |
| Sheetz                   |
| Shell                    |
| Sinclair                 |
| Speedway                 |
| Sunoco                   |
| Sunoco Canada            |
| TEXACO                   |
| TravelCenters of America |
| Ultramar                 |
| Valero                   |
| Wawa                     |
| Parking                  |

|                        |
|------------------------|
| Auto Services          |
| AAA                    |
| Advance Auto Parts     |
| America's Tire         |
| AutoZone               |
| BOSCH Car Service      |
| Certigard              |
| Discount Tire          |
| Firestone              |
| GOODYEAR               |
| Kal Tire               |
| Midas                  |
| Napa                   |
| O'Reilly Auto Parts    |
| Sears Auto Center      |
| Road Assistance        |
| Automobile Dealerships |
| Auto Parts             |
| Car Washes             |
| Motorcycle Dealerships |

### 3. Travel

| Travel                          |
|---------------------------------|
| Airports                        |
| Hotels                          |
| Americas Best Value Inn         |
| AmericInn                       |
| Andaz                           |
| Ascend Collection               |
| Baymont Inn & Suites            |
| Best Western                    |
| Cambria Suites                  |
| Canadas Best Value Inn          |
| Candlewood Suites               |
| Clarion Hotel                   |
| Comfort INN                     |
| Comfort Suites                  |
| CONRAD                          |
| Country Inn & Suites by Carlson |
| COURTYARD by Marriott           |
| Crowne Plaza                    |
| Days Inn                        |
| DELTA                           |
| Doubletree                      |
| Econo Lodge                     |

|                              |
|------------------------------|
| Embassy Suites               |
| Grand Residences by Marriott |
| Hampton Inn                  |
| Hampton Inn & Suites         |
| Hawthorn Suites              |
| Hilton                       |
| Hilton Garden Inn            |
| Hilton Grand Vacations       |
| Holiday Inn                  |
| Holiday Inn Express          |
| Homewood Suites              |
| Hotel Indigo                 |
| Howard Johnson               |
| Hyatt Place                  |
| Hyatt                        |
| Hyatt Summerfield Suites     |
| Intercontinental             |
| JW Marriott                  |
| LA QUINTA INN                |
| Lexington                    |
| Mainstay Suites              |
| Marriott                     |
| Marriott VACATION CLUB       |

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| Microtel Inns & Suites  |
| Motel 6                 |
| NOVOTEL                 |
| Omni Hotels             |
| Park Inn                |
| Park Plaza              |
| QUALITY INN             |
| Radisson                |
| Radisson SAS            |
| RAMADA                  |
| Red Roof Inn            |
| Regent Hotels & Resorts |
| Renaissance             |
| Residence Inn           |
| Ritz-Carlton Club       |
| Rodeway Inn             |
| Sheraton                |
| Sleep Inn               |
| SOFITEL                 |
| Staybridge Suites       |
| Studio 6                |
| Suburban Extended Stay  |
| Super 8                 |

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| Thriftlodge Canada         |
| Travelodge                 |
| Travelodge Canada          |
| VAN DER VALK               |
| WALDORF ASTORIA COLLECTION |
| Wingate by Wyndham         |
| Wyndham                    |
| Rest Areas                 |
| Tourist Information        |
| Tourist Attractions        |
| Travel Agents              |
| City Centers               |
| Rental Car Agencies        |
| Alamo                      |
| AVIS                       |
| Budget                     |
| Dollar Rent A Car          |
| Enterprise                 |
| Hertz                      |
| National                   |
| Thrifty                    |
| Campgrounds                |

#### 4. Shopping

| Travel          |
|-----------------|
| Ferry Terminals |
| Bus Stations    |
| Local Transit   |
| Train Stations  |

| Shopping             |
|----------------------|
| Department Stores    |
| Canadian Tire        |
| Dollar General       |
| Dollar Tree          |
| Family Dollar        |
| JCPenney             |
| Kmart                |
| Kohl's               |
| Nordstrom            |
| Sears                |
| Sears Hometown Store |
| Target               |
| T.J. Maxx            |
| Walmart              |
| Convenience Stores   |
| 7-Eleven             |
| ampm                 |
| BP                   |
| Circle K             |
| Fleetfuels           |
| GetGo                |
| GTO                  |

|                          |
|--------------------------|
| Kangaroo Express         |
| Murphy Express           |
| Murphy USA               |
| Petro Stopping Centers   |
| QuikTrip                 |
| Rutter's                 |
| Sunoco Canada            |
| TravelCenters of America |
| Wawa                     |
| Shopping Centers         |
| Office Depot             |
| Grocery Stores           |
| Giant Eagle              |
| Giant Food Stores        |
| IGA                      |
| Ingles Markets           |
| Food Lion                |
| Kroger                   |
| Martin's Food Markets    |
| Meijer                   |
| Publix                   |
| Sav-Mor Foods            |
| Save-A-Lot               |

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| SuperValu               |
| Music Stores            |
| Bookstores              |
| Barnes & Noble          |
| Electronics Stores      |
| AT&T                    |
| Best Buy                |
| Future Shop             |
| GameStop                |
| Radioshack              |
| Sprint                  |
| Staples                 |
| T-Mobile                |
| OfficeMax               |
| US Cellular             |
| Verizon                 |
| Gift Shops              |
| Sporting Goods Stores   |
| Dick's Sporting Goods   |
| Sports Authority        |
| Home Specialty Stores   |
| ABC Fine Wine & Spirits |
| Ace Hardware            |

| Shopping            |
|---------------------|
| Claire's            |
| Costco              |
| Home Depot          |
| Lowe's              |
| Merle Norman        |
| PETCO               |
| PETSMART            |
| Sally Beauty Supply |
| SHERWIN-WILLIAMS    |
| True Value          |
| Clothing Shops      |
| Mark's              |
| Shoe Stores         |
| Pharmacies          |
| CVS/pharmacy        |
| Giant Drugstore     |
| Ingles Pharmacy     |
| Kmart Pharmacy      |
| Kroger Pharmacy     |
| Martin's Drugstore  |
| Meijer Pharmacy     |

|                     |
|---------------------|
| Rite Aid            |
| Shoppers Drug Mart  |
| Target Pharmacy     |
| Walgreens           |
| General Merchandise |

## 5. Recreation

| Recreation             |
|------------------------|
| Amusement Parks        |
| Museums                |
| Cinemas                |
| Golf Courses           |
| Sports Complexes       |
| Sports Activities      |
| Wineries               |
| Video & Game Rental    |
| Ski Resorts            |
| Recreation Areas       |
| Other Recreation Areas |

## 6. Financial Services

| Financial Services     |
|------------------------|
| Banks                  |
| Bank of America        |
| BB&T                   |
| Chase                  |
| Citibank               |
| Citizens Bank          |
| Fifth Third Bank       |
| Key Bank               |
| PNC Bank               |
| RBC Bank               |
| Regions                |
| SunTrust               |
| TD Bank                |
| TD Canada Trust        |
| US Bank                |
| Wells Fargo            |
| ATMs                   |
| Check Cashing Services |
| Money Transfer         |

## 7. Community

| Community                 |
|---------------------------|
| Police Stations           |
| Post Offices              |
| Libraries                 |
| Schools                   |
| Fire Departments          |
| Churches                  |
| Synagogues                |
| Convention Centers        |
| City Halls                |
| Civic Centers             |
| Court Houses              |
| Government Offices        |
| Waste & Sanitary Services |
| Utilities                 |
| Business Facilities       |

## 8. Services

| Services                    |
|-----------------------------|
| Hospitals                   |
| Medical Services            |
| Physicians                  |
| Tax Services                |
| Attorneys                   |
| Funeral Homes               |
| Hair & Beauty Services      |
| Cleaning & Laundry Services |
| Social Services             |
| Communication               |
| Dentists                    |
| Photography Services        |
| Tailors & Alterations       |
| Movers                      |
| Nursing Home                |
| Optical Services            |
| Personal Services           |
| Repair Service              |
| Veterinary Hospital         |

# Siri Eyes Free

## How to start Siri

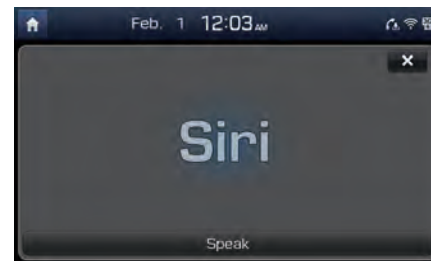
If you want to use Siri, you have to connect your iOS device to the Multimedia system through Bluetooth.

(Please check whether your iOS device supports Siri and turning Siri On.)

Then you can use Siri while pressing and holding  key on the steering wheel.

## How to use Siri

When you access the Siri screen while pressing and holding  key on the steering wheel, you can select  button and then you can speak what you want. Note that the Multimedia system only supports “Phone” related functions. Other functions will be performed in your iOS device. If you press voice key quickly, Siri would re-start. If you hold down voice key, Siri would be terminated and the screen would go back to the previous screen. Eyes-Free mode would be activated automatically while you are driving. When shifting gears into P or putting the Parking brake on, Eyes-Free mode would be deactivated automatically.



## i Information

- Functions and feedbacks from voice commands via Siri are executed in the iOS device. If the iOS version is changed, the functions and response may be different according to the iOS device and the latest version.

MEMO

07

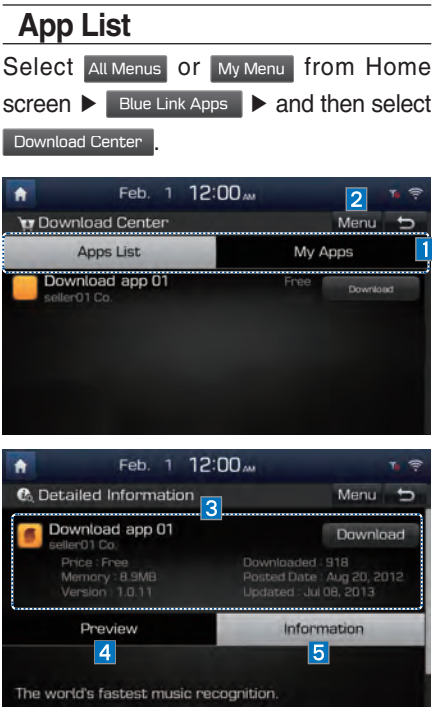
## part.7 Info

Download Center  
SiriusXM™ Data

Download Center

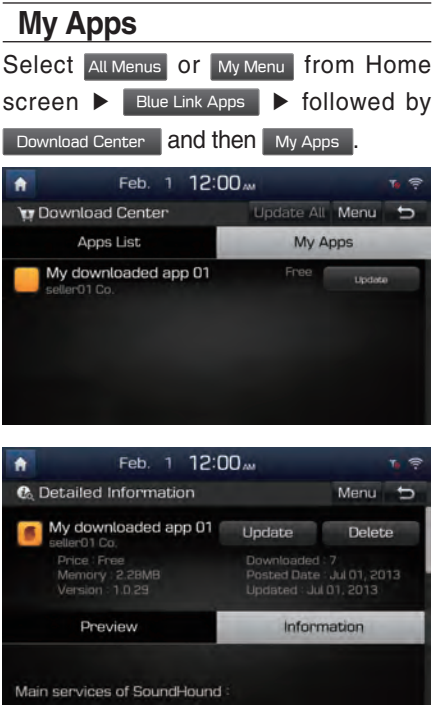
With Download Center, you can install paid/free applications or check for related information. Only BlueLink center, verified applications can be installed.

You can use Download Center after agreeing to the terms of service and use on the screen. (Only 1 time for initial launch)



| Name                                          | Description                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Application Download and Run buttons | Button state changes according to the application state.                            |
| Download                                      | Downloads free applications.                                                        |
| Purchase                                      | Downloads paid applications.                                                        |
| Re-download                                   | Downloads deleted applications after previously installing them.                    |
| Retry                                         | Downloads the applications that failed to download due to network or system errors. |
| Run                                           | Runs installed applications.                                                        |
| Cancel                                        | Cancels any downloads and updates.                                                  |

| Name                   | Description                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Menu                 | Updates and refreshes the menu.                                                                                                                          |
| Update                 | After installation, it shows applications requiring updates. The update screen shows the Update All button to update all applications that need updates. |
| Refresh                | Refreshes the app list status.                                                                                                                           |
| 3 Detailed Information | When the application list area is pressed, it moves to the Detailed Information screen.                                                                  |
| 4 Preview              | Displays application images.                                                                                                                             |
| 5 Information          | Displays application information.                                                                                                                        |



The **My Apps** menu displays the **Re-download** , **Update** , **Run** options for downloaded applications. All functions of **My Apps** are the same as those in the app list.

- i Information**
- You can update applications already running only after closing them.
  - Details on downloaded apps can be checked within the Download Center.
  - Apps available for download may vary depending on the environment.

## SiriusXM™ Data

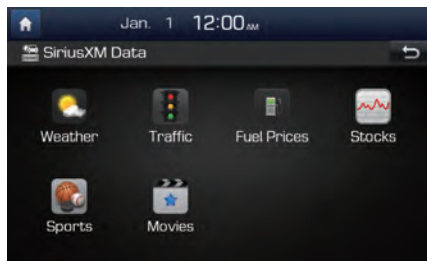
### About SiriusXM™ Data Service

The SiriusXM™ Data Service is a paid membership Satellite radio service which provides users with traffic, stock, sports, and weather information.

However, weather information is not supported for vehicles purchased in Canada.

### Accessing SiriusXM™ Data

Press the “SiriusXM Data” icon after selecting **All Menus** or the **INFO** hard-key to enter the SiriusXM™ Data mode.

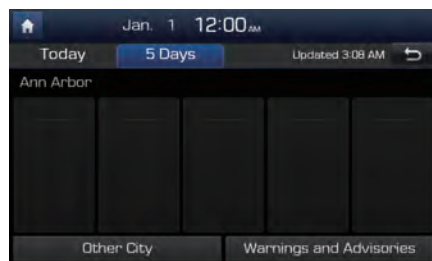
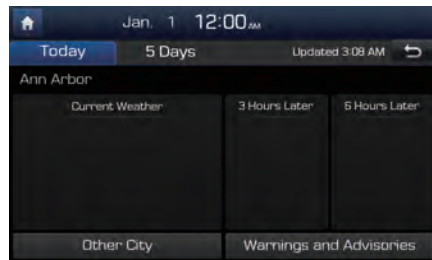


### SiriusXM™ Weather Announcement

At the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Weather” icon to enter the Weather Announcement mode.

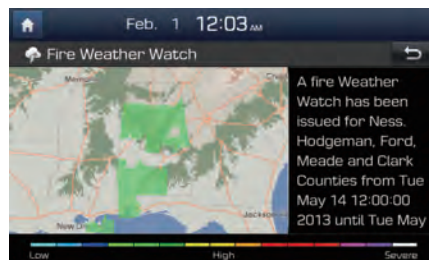
## Weather Forecast

This service provides current weather information and weather forecasts for the next five days in your region. To change the region, select the **Other City** button and select the desired region.



## Warnings and Advisories

This service provides weather warnings and advisories, such as tornado, storm, Floodflood, etc. as symbols on the Navigation map.

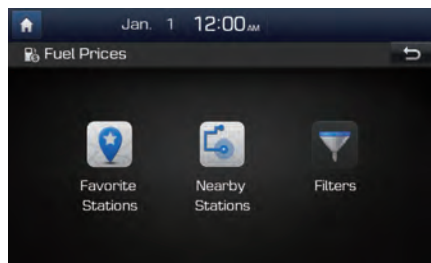


## SiriusXM™ Traffic Information

At the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Traffic” icon to enter the Traffic Announcement mode.

## SiriusXM™ Fuel Price Information

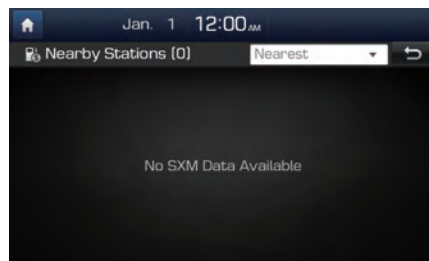
At the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Fuel Prices” icon to enter the Fuel Prices Information mode.



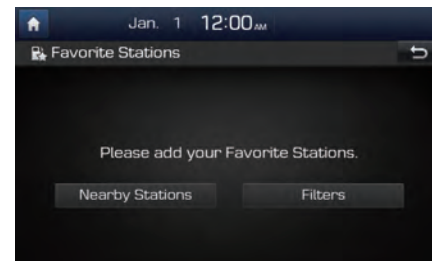
## Search for Nearby Stations, and Register Key Locations as Favorite Stations.

Search for nearby stations with the “Nearby Stations” menu.

It shows station locations, starting from the nearest one, and select “Nearest” menu on the top right side to further sort them by price or brand name.



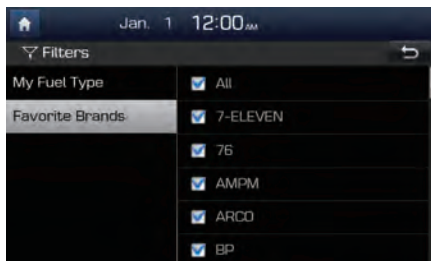
Select the  button to the right of the list to register key locations as a Favorite Station so that you can go there again with the “Favorite Stations” menu. Select the list to move to navigation destination select screen to receive guidance.



## My Fuel Type Settings

With the “Filters” menu, you can select fuel types and favorite brands.

When searching for Nearby Stations, the results will reflect selected fuel types and brand information.



## SiriusXM™ Stock Information

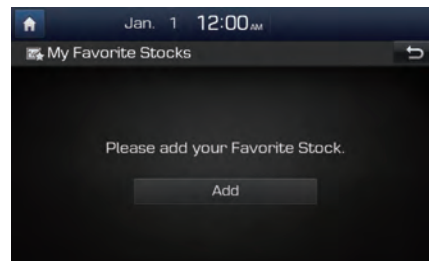
In the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Stocks” icon to enter the Stocks mode.

Stocks is a feature that shows the current value and change of stocks.

For symbols which you are interested in, press the icon to save the symbol as a part of Saved symbols can be viewed from the My Favorites button on the Stock Main screen.

## My Favorites

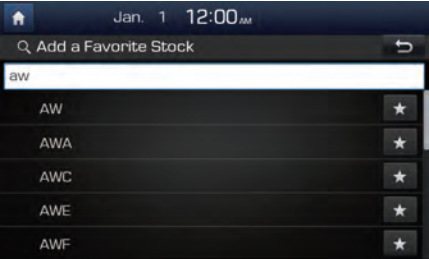
My Favorites shows a list of stocks added by the user. When entering the Stocks menu for the first time, a screen is displayed for you to add your favorite stock information. Select the **Add** button to move to the stock search screen.



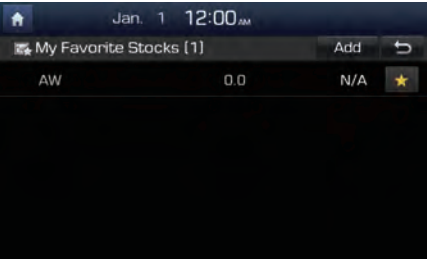
### Stock Search

Use the Stock Search menu to search for specific stocks.

Select the  button after searching for your favorite stocks to save them in “My Favorite”.



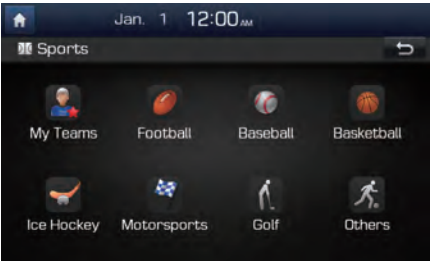
In the My Favorites screen, you can find the selected stock information that you registered.



### SiriusXM™ Sports Information

Press the “Sports” icon to enter the Sports mode.

This service provides real-time updated information on scores and schedules for major sports, such as NFL, NBA, NCAA football, NCAA basketball, NHL, MLB, NASCAR and more.

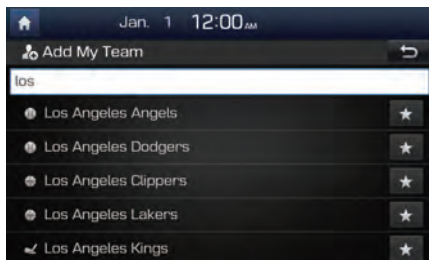
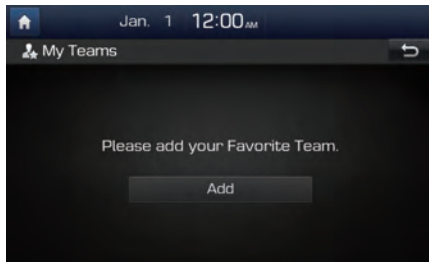


## My Teams

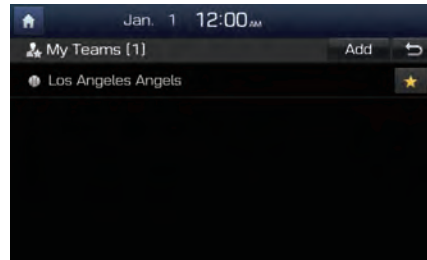
You can save teams which you are interested in as part of My teams to easily view related scores and schedules.

Select the My Teams menu and then select the **Add** button to search for and register your favorite teams.

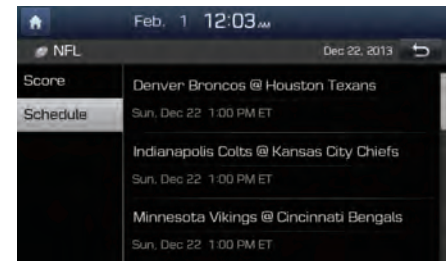
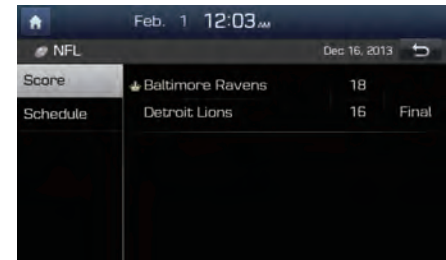
Search for your favorite teams and select the **★** button on the right to add it to the “My Teams” list.



You can always check the list of teams that you added in the “My Teams” menu. Select the **★** button on the right side of the team name to delete the team from “My Teams” or select the **Add** button to add other teams.



Press the team name to check daily results and recent schedules for that team.

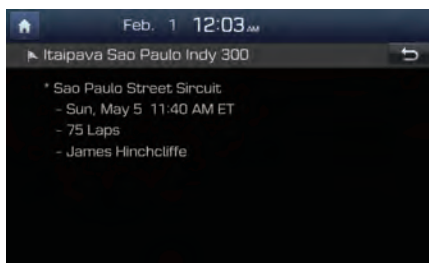




Feb. 1 12:03 AM

Kingsmill champ

| Name             | Score    | Ranking |
|------------------|----------|---------|
| Cristie Kerr     | -12 (0)  | 1       |
| Suzann Pettersen | -12 (0)  | 2       |
| Ariga Jutanugarn | -10 (66) | T3      |
| Ilhee Lee        | -10 (67) | T3      |
| Angela Stanford  | -9 (69)  | T5      |



Feb. 1 12:03 AM

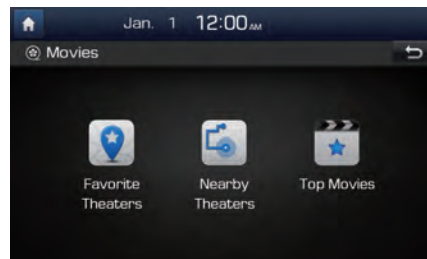
Itaipava Sao Paulo Indy 300

- \* Sao Paulo Street Circuit
- Sun, May 5 11:40 AM ET
- 75 Laps
- James Hinchcliffe

## SiriusXM™ Movie Information

Press the “Movies” icon to enter the Movie mode.

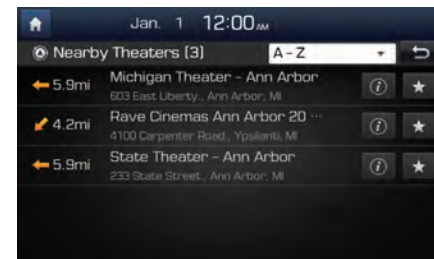
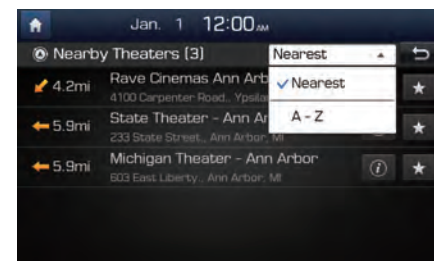
You can check recent movies and nearby theaters, and also register your favorite theater locations.



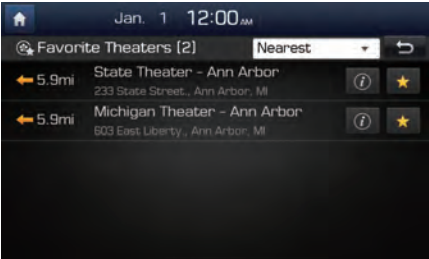
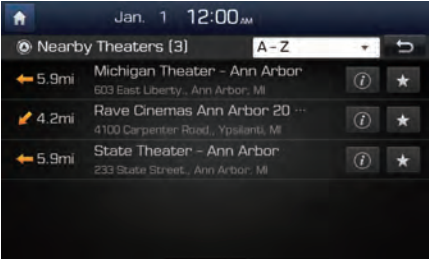
## Search for Nearby Theaters, and Register Any Key Locations as Favorite Theaters.

In the “Nearby Theaters” menu, you can search for any nearby theaters.

It shows theaters, starting from the nearest one, and selecting the “Nearest” menu at the top right side will sort them by name.



Select the  button to the right of the list to register your favorite theater so that you can always check it again using the “Favorite Theaters” menu and selecting the  button to view the current movie information for that theater.



Select from the list to move to the select navigation destination screen and receive directions.

In the “Top Movies” menu, you can check for any movies that are currently popular. Select the  button to the right of a movie title to view the plot summary and any other detailed information.



MEMO

# 08

## part.8 Other Features

Climate Mode

Camera

# Other Features

## Climate Mode

### Operating Climate Mode

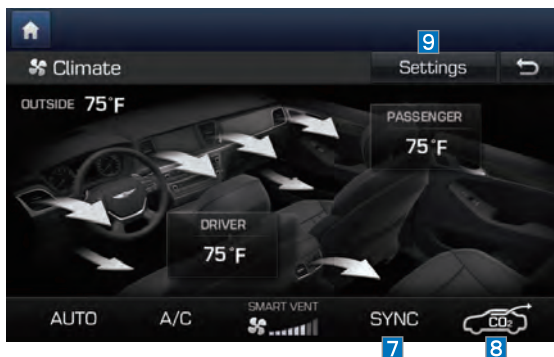
Press the **CLIMATE** key for the climate system to see status information in the full screen display.

While multimedia or navigation is in use, the climate system information will be displayed over top when you control the temperature (TEMP) or turn on the air conditioner (A/C).

### Basic Mode Screen

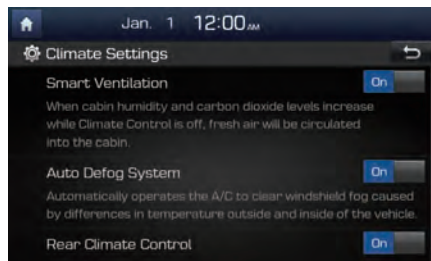


| Name                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Outside Temperature                                          | Displays the current temperature outside the vehicle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>2</b> Set the temperature of the driver's seat and passenger seats | <p>Displays the configured temperature settings for the driver's seat and the passenger seats. Cooling or heating will continue until the temperature matches the configured temperature settings.</p> <p><b>i</b> The internal temperature can be controlled in increments of 1°F within a range of 63°F to 89°F.</p> <p><b>i</b> LOW is displayed when the temperature is set to anything below 63°F, and HIGH is displayed when it is set to anything above 89°F.</p> |
| <b>3</b> Air direction                                                | Displays the configured air direction settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>4</b> Air volume                                                   | Displays the configured air volume settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>5</b> Cooling/heating control status (AUTO)                        | <p>Displayed when the <b>AUTO</b> key is pressed and cooling/heating operates automatically according to the configured temperature settings</p> <p><b>i</b> AUTO will be turned off when you try to do the following with AUTO on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Control the air volume</li><li>- Control the air direction</li><li>- Turn the air conditioning (A/C) on/off</li><li>- Turn on the moisture removal function for the windshield</li></ul> |
| <b>6</b> Air conditioning control status                              | Displayed when the <b>A/C</b> key is pressed and the air conditioning starts cooling/heating.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



| Name                                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>7</b> Simultaneous temperature settings for the driver's seat and the passenger seats (SYNC) | Displayed when the <b>SYNC</b> key is pressed and the temperatures of the driver's seat and the passenger seats can be configured at the same time. |
| <b>8</b> Alert for excessive amount of internal CO2                                             | Displayed when a high level of internal CO2 is detected as this could cause a feeling of driver fatigue. Ventilate the internal air.                |
| <b>9</b> Settings                                                                               | Goes to the Climate Settings screen. Smart Ventilation, Auto-Defog System and Rear Climate Control can be turned on and off.                        |

## Climate Setting Screen



# Camera

## ⚠️ WARNING

### - Backing Up & Using Camera

- Never rely solely on the rear view camera when backing up. Prior to entering your vehicle always do a visual check of the area behind your vehicle, and before backing up be aware of your surroundings and supplement the rear view camera by looking over your shoulders and checking your rear view mirrors. Due to the difficulty of ensuring that the area behind you remains clear, always back up slowly and stop immediately if you even suspect that a person, and especially a child, might be behind you.

## i Information

- The camera screen shown while the system boots up does not display any text or buttons.

## Steering-linked camera

- This device is connected to a rear detection camera to see behind the car for safe reversing.
- The Rear View Camera turns on automatically if you shift the gear to R when the power is on or the engine has started.
- While the device boots up, shift the gear to "R" to activate the rear detection cameras. Shift the gear to another position to deactivate the rear detection camera.

## 🔧 NOTICE

- A wide-angle lens is installed as the rear detection camera to get a wider view, so there may be some difference between the actual distance and the distance that appears. on-screen. For safety, make sure to view the back, right, and left sides of the car for yourself.
- The color of the parking guidelines displayed in the picture may differ from the actual screen.
- When booted up, blinking may occur when you switch to a UI screen.



| Name            | Description                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 Red Line      | About 0.5m from the rear bumper               |
| 2 Yellow Line 1 | About 1m from the rear bumper                 |
| 3 Yellow Line 2 | About 3m from the rear bumper                 |
| 4 Yellow Line 3 | Trajectory of the wheel on the driver's side  |
| 5 Yellow Line 4 | Trajectory of the wheel on the passenger side |
| 6 Blue Line     | Neutral steering trajectory                   |

As you reverse your car and monitor the area behind your car, the steering-linked driving trajectory and the neutral driving trajectory are both displayed.

MEMO

## part.9 Setup

- Setup
- Navigation Settings
- Sound Settings
- Display Settings
- Bluetooth Settings
- Blue Link Settings
- Voice Recognition Settings
- Clock Settings
- Wi-Fi Settings
- Language Settings
- Keyboard Settings
- Blue Link Apps Settings
- Screen Saver Settings
- Phone Projection Settings
- Advanced Settings
- System Info

# Setup

## Setup

Setup is the screen to control system settings of the Multimedia System.

To enter the screen, press the **SETUP** key of the device or the **Setup** button in All Menus.



## Navigation Settings

For more details, refer to part 5. Navigation Settings.

## Sound Settings

Adjusts the sound effects for the whole system.



| Features       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Position     | Select the Up/Down/Left/Right button to control sound positioning. Select  to concentrate the sound on the center of vehicle. |
| 2 Volume Ratio | Sets the volume of broadcast, media, ringtone, etc., respectively.                                                                                                                                               |

| Features                   | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>3</b> Tone              | Drag the slide bar to control bass/mid/treble settings.<br>Select <b>Center</b> to initialize the settings.                                   |
| <b>4</b> Priority          | You can adjust the volume ratio between navigation announcements and regular audio.                                                           |
| <b>5</b> Navigation Volume | Sets the method of navigation guidance volume adjustment.                                                                                     |
| <b>6</b> Advanced          | Select additional audio options such as “Speed dependent volume control” that automatically controls Audio volume according to vehicle speed. |
| <b>7</b> Beep              | Select to activate a beep when pressing buttons.                                                                                              |

### **i** Information

- Advanced sound settings may differ according to selected AMP option.
- The seat shape may differ according to vehicle model.

## Display Settings

Controls the display brightness and image rate for the whole system.

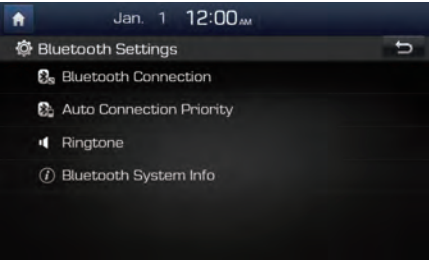


| Features             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode        | Provides the Automatic feature that automatically adjusts the brightness of the screen according to the brightness levels of the car's surroundings. If you do not use the Automatic feature, you can select either Daylight or Night mode and maintain the brightness accordingly. |
| <b>2</b> Brightness  | Adjusts the level of brightness in Daylight or Night mode.<br>(If you use the Automatic feature, you can set the brightness for both Daylight and Night modes.)                                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b> Adjust      | Adjust the hue, contrast, and saturation of the screen by dragging the sliders.<br>Select the <b>Center</b> button to initialize the settings.                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>4</b> Display Off | Provides the Display Off (touch activation) function.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

# Bluetooth Settings

Changes Bluetooth phone settings.

- Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth**.
- Home screen ► Select **All Menus** ► Select **Setup** ► Select **Bluetooth**.



## Bluetooth Connection Settings

Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth** ► Select **Bluetooth Connection**.



| Features                                        | Description                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Paired Device List                     | Displays the paired Bluetooth device list. When selecting from the list, the device is connected or disconnected. |
| <b>2</b> Bluetooth Audio Connection Status      | An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth Audio connection.                                                       |
| <b>3</b> Bluetooth Hands-Free Connection Status | An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth Hands-free connection.                                                  |
| <b>4</b> Add New                                | Register a new Bluetooth device.                                                                                  |
| <b>5</b> Delete Devices                         | Select and delete a paired device.                                                                                |
| <b>6</b> Delete All                             | Delete all paired devices.                                                                                        |
| <b>7</b> Help                                   | Switches to the Bluetooth Connection Help screen.                                                                 |

## **i** Information

- Up to 5 Bluetooth devices can be paired.
- Only one Bluetooth device can be connected at a time.
- During a Bluetooth device connection, another device cannot be paired.
- When you delete a paired device, the Call History and Contacts stored in the head unit are also completely deleted.
- Bluetooth Hands-free and Bluetooth Audio functions are supported.
- Hands-free and audio-supported devices, such as a Bluetooth smartphone or audio, will function normally.
- When a Bluetooth device is connected, if the Bluetooth connection is unexpectedly disconnected, due to being out of communication range, the device powering off, or a Bluetooth communication error, the Bluetooth device automatically searches for and connects to nearby Bluetooth devices.
- If the system is not stable, due to a vehicle-Bluetooth device communication error, restore the Default Factory Settings.
- For Default Factory Settings, the bluetooth settings are reset to factory settings
- Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth** ► Select **Bluetooth System Info** ► Select **Default Factory Settings**

## **Auto Connection Priority**

Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth** ► Select **Auto Connection Priority**

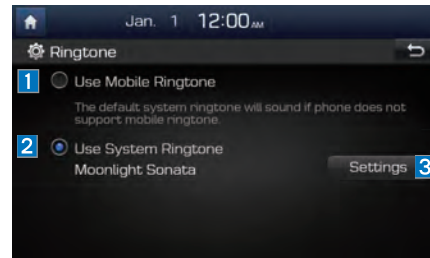


When the engine is running, the selected Bluetooth device is automatically connected. If you fail to connect the selected device, the previously-connected device is automatically connected, and if it also fails, then it tries to connect all paired devices sequentially.

Depending on auto connection priority, connection to a device may take time.

## **Phone Ringtone**

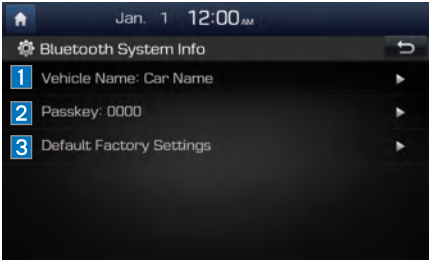
Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth** ► Select **Ringtone**



| Features                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Use Phone Ringtone  | The configured mobile ringtone comes out through the vehicle speakers when you receive a call. When a mobile device doesn't support it, the basic ringtone of the vehicle will be used. |
| <b>2</b> Use System Ringtone | The system ringtone will be used.                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>3</b> Settings            | Changes the ringtone.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>4</b> Ringtone Type       | Selects a ringtone by name.                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>5</b> Preview             | Previews the available ringtones.                                                                                                                                                       |

## Bluetooth System Information

Press the **SETUP** key ► Select **Bluetooth** ►  
Select **Bluetooth System Info**.



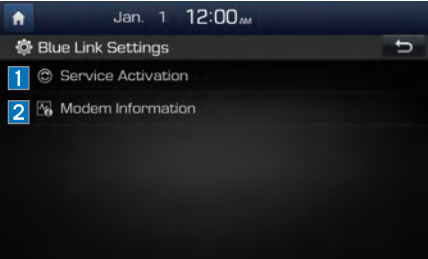
| Features                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Vehicle Name             | You can change the Bluetooth device name of the vehicle.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>2</b> Passkey                  | You can change the passkey used for Bluetooth device authentication. the initial passkey is 0000.                                                                                        |
| <b>3</b> Default Factory Settings | You can delete all paired devices and restore the Default Bluetooth Settings. For Default Factory Settings, all paired devices are deleted, and the system is reset to factory settings. |

### **i** Information

- The Vehicle Name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.

# Blue Link Settings

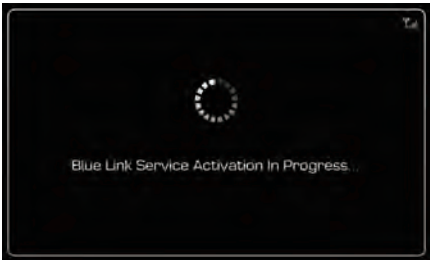
- Press the **SETUP** key ▶ Select **Blue Link** .
- Press the **BLUELINK** key ▶ Select **Blue Link Settings** .



| Features             | Description                  |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Service Activation | Reactivates the Blue Link    |
| 2 Modem Information  | Shows MEID modem information |

## Service Activation

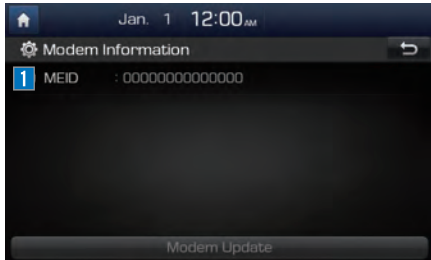
Press the **BLUELINK** key ▶ Select **Blue Link Settings** ▶ Select **Service Activation** .



Activation may take up to five minutes.  
Do not turn the engine off while activation is in progress.  
If activation fails, contact the Blue Link Center at (855) 2-BlueLink.  
During service activation, the hard keys in the head unit do not function.

## Modem Information

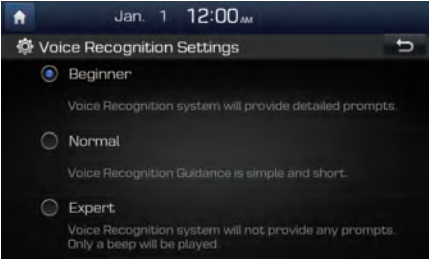
Press the **BLUELINK** key ▶ Select **Blue Link Settings** ▶ Select **Modem Information** .



| Features | Description                                     |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1 MEID   | Identification number of the Blue Link terminal |

# Voice Recognition Settings

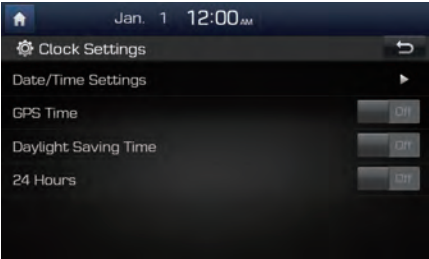
Configure how to make a call with Voice Recognition Guidance and Voice Recognition.



| Features | Description                                        |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Guidance | Select an option from Beginner, Normal, or Expert. |

# Clock Settings

Provides the time and date settings.



Provides the GPS Time, Date/Time Settings, Daylight Savings Time, Time Zone, and 24 Hours options.

# Wi-Fi Settings

You can share a digital-device network with the vehicle device through Wi-Fi.

## Wi-Fi Settings Screen



| Features            | Description                                                                      |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Wi-Fi             | Turn on/off Wi-Fi.                                                               |
| 2 MAC Address       | Displays the MAC address.                                                        |
| 3 Refresh           | Searches available networks near the vehicle.                                    |
| 4 Network Name      | Displays available network AP (Access Point) names.                              |
| 5 Add Wi-Fi Network | Enter the network ID/ password to connect to a hidden network AP (Access Point). |

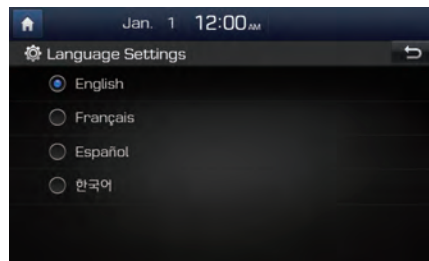
---

## How to Connect to a Network

1. In the Wi-Fi settings of a digital device, activate Internet sharing (hot spot).
2. In the vehicle network list, select the desired device to connect to. Enter the password to connect, if any.

## Language Settings

You can configure the displayed system language.



When the language is changed, the system language is automatically changed. Unique data including MP3 file name is not changed and some languages don't support voice recognition.

## Keyboard Settings

You can configure the keyboard layout for each language.



You can configure ABCD or QWERTY keyboards for the system.

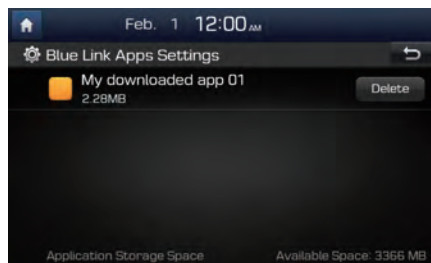
---

### **i** Information

- Configured keyboard layouts are applied to all input modes.
-

## Blue Link Apps Settings

Displays the applications that were downloaded through the Download Center. View the memory status of installed applications or delete them.



You can delete downloaded applications in the Download Center. To recover a deleted application, you can re-install the application with the re-download function in the Download Center.

## Screen Saver Settings

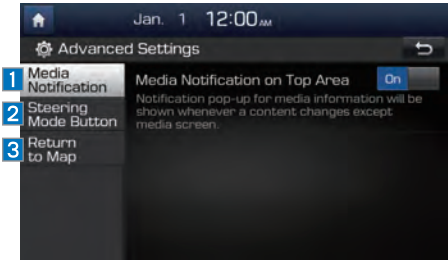
Configures a screen to be displayed when the system is powered off.



## Phone Projection Settings

For more details, refer to Phone Projection guide.

# Advanced Settings



| Features               | Description                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Media Notification   | Sets whether to display media information at the top of the screen as the next item is played when not on the media screen. |
| 2 Steering Mode Button | Sets the media to be played when the steering wheel or rear seat <b>MODE</b> button is pressed.                             |
| 3 Return to Map        | Sets the time after which the screen will return to the map screen from the broadcast/music playback screen.                |

# System Info

At the System Info screen, software version information, updates, and storage status details are available.



| Features  | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 SW Info | System version information and update details are available. Select the <b>Update</b> button to update the system. After update is complete, the system will reboot automatically. |
| 2 Storage | Displays the memory space available for media files and applications.                                                                                                              |

# System Update

At the System Info screen, insert the updated memory (USB or SD card) with the latest file downloaded, and then select the **Update** button to begin updating. The system will then reboot automatically.

## i Information

- This product needs supplemented software updates, additional new functions, and renewed maps, which collectively may take some time to complete, depending on the amount of data.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- If the power is disconnected or the USB or SD card is removed during an update, the data might be damaged. Please wait until the update is complete while the engine is on.

MEMO

# 10

## part.10 Appendix

Product Specification

Troubleshooting

FAQ

# Appendix

## Product Specification

### TFT-LCD

|                   |                                                           |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Screen Size       | Navigation Device - 8 inch(176.4 x 99.36 mm)              |
| Resolution        | Navigation Device - 384000 pixels (Resolution: 800 x 480) |
| Operating Method  | TFT(Thin Film Transistor) Active Matrix                   |
| Viewing Angle     | Left/Right, Top/Bottom: ALL 89°                           |
| Internal Lighting | LED                                                       |

### Radio

|                   |                                          |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Channels          | FM: 87.5 MHz ~ 107.9 MHz (Step: 200 KHz) |
|                   | AM: 530 KHz ~ 1710 KHz (Step: 10 KHz)    |
| Sensitivity       | FM : Under 10 dBu/AM : Under 40 dBu      |
| Distortion Factor | Within 2 %                               |

### Common

|                       |                                     |                     |                              |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Name                  | Car TFT LCD Display Navigation Unit |                     |                              |
| Power Supply          | DC 14.4 V                           | Operating Power     | DC 9 V ~ DC 16 V             |
| Current Consumption   | 2.5 A                               | Sleep Current       | 0.5 mA (Head Unit Only)      |
| Operating Temperature | -20 ~ +70 °C (-4 ~ +158 °F)         | Storage Temperature | -40 ~ +85 °C (-40 ~ +185 °F) |
| Dimensions            | 178 X 102 X167.5 mm (Main BOX)      |                     |                              |
| Weight                | 2.4 kg                              |                     |                              |

### Wi-Fi Details

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Frequency             | 2412 ~ 2462 MHz             |
| Specification         | 802.11 b/g/n                |
| Number of Channels    | 11 Channel                  |
| Operating Temperature | -20 ~ +70 °C (-4 ~ +158 °F) |

## MODEM RF SPEC

|      |    |                     |                                                                             |
|------|----|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LTE  | RX | Frequency           | 2110 MHz ~ 2155 MHz(B4),<br>746 MHz ~ 756 MHz(B13)                          |
|      |    | Sensitivity         | -96.3 dBm under@10M(B4),<br>-93.3 dBm under@10M(B13)<br>(Throughput ≥ 95 %) |
|      | TX | Frequency           | 1710 MHz ~ 1755 MHz(B4),<br>777 MHz ~ 787 MHz(B13)                          |
|      |    | Max RF Output Power | Power Class3(B4, B13),<br>20.3 dBm ~ 25.7 dBm (conducted)                   |
| CDMA | RX | Frequency           | 869 MHz ~ 894 MHz(BC0),<br>1930 MHz ~ 1990 MHz(BC1)                         |
|      |    | Sensitivity         | -104 dBm under(FER = 0.5 % under)                                           |
|      | TX | Frequency           | 824 MHz ~ 849 MHz(BC0),<br>1850 MHz ~ 1910 MHz(BC1)                         |
|      |    | Max RF Output Power | Power Class3(BC0),<br>Power Class2(BC1),<br>23.01 dBm ~ 30 dBm(conducted)   |

## Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

|                         |                                                  |                                    |             |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Frequency Range         | 2402 ~ 2480 MHz                                  | Supported Bluetooth® Specification | 3.0         |
| Supported Profile       | Handsfree(1.6), A2DP(1.2), AVRCP(1.4), PBAP(1.0) |                                    |             |
| Bluetooth Power Class 2 | -6~ 4 dBm                                        | Number of Channels                 | 79 channels |

# Troubleshooting

- 1. Errors which occur during the operation or installation of the device may be mistaken as a malfunction of the actual device.
- 2. If you are having problems with the device, try the suggestions listed below.
- 3. If the problems persist, contact your dealer.

| Problem                                                         | Possible Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There are small red, blue, or green dots on the screen          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Because the LCD is manufactured with technology requiring high point density, a pixel or lighting deficiency may occur within 0.01% of total pixels</li></ul>                                                    |
| The sound or image is not working                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Has the Switch for the vehicle been turned to [ACC] or [ON]?</li><li>• Has the SYSTEM been turned OFF?</li></ul>                                                                                                 |
| The screen is being displayed but sound is not working          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Has the volume been set to a low level?</li><li>• Has the volume been muted?</li></ul>                                                                                                                           |
| When the power is turned on, the corners of the screen are dark | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The display appearing somewhat dark after prolonged periods of use is normal with LCD panels. It is not a malfunction</li><li>• If the screen is very dark, contact your nearest dealer for assistance</li></ul> |
| Sound is working from only one speaker                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Are the positions of Fader or Balance sound controls adjusted to only one side?</li></ul>                                                                                                                        |

| Problem                                                             | Possible Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sound does not work in AUX mode                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Are the audio connector jacks fully inserted into the AUX terminal?</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| The external device is not working                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Is the external device connected with a standard connector cable?</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Upon turning power on, the most recent mode screen is not displayed | <p>Within modes that play files by reading external sources, such as discs, USB, iPod, or Bluetooth® streaming mode, the most recently played mode screen prior to turning off power may not properly load</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If there is no disc or the corresponding device is not connected, the mode operated prior to the most recent mode will operate</li><li>• If the previous mode still cannot be properly played, the mode operated prior to that will operate</li></ul> |

| Problem                    | Possible Cause                                                  | Countermeasure                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The power does not turn on | The fuse is disconnected                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace with a suitable fuse</li> <li>• If the fuse is disconnected again, please contact your point of purchase or dealer</li> </ul> |
|                            | Device is not properly connected                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check to see that the device has been properly connected</li> </ul>                                                                   |
| The system does not play   | The disc has not been inserted or has been inserted upside down | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insert the disc properly so that the sides are facing the correct direct</li> </ul>                                                   |
|                            | The disc has been contaminated                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wipe away dirt and other foreign substances from the disc</li> </ul>                                                                  |
|                            | The vehicle battery is low                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Charge the battery If the problem persists, contact your point of purchase or dealer</li> </ul>                                       |
|                            | A disc not supported by the device has been inserted            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insert a disc which is supported by the device</li> </ul>                                                                             |

| Problem                             | Possible Cause                                                                                                                            | Countermeasure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The image color/tone quality is low | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The brightness, saturation, hue, and contrast levels are not set properly</li> </ul>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Properly adjust the brightness, saturation, hue, and contrast levels through Display Setup</li> </ul>                                                                                                                      |
| Sound does not work                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The volume level is set to the lowest level</li> <li>• The connection is not proper</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjust the volume level</li> <li>• Check to see that the device has been properly connected</li> <li>• The sound will not work when the device is fast-forwarding, rewinding, scanning, or playing in slow mode</li> </ul> |
|                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The device is currently fast-forwarding, rewinding, scanning, or playing in slow mode</li> </ul> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| The sound or image quality is low   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vibration is occurring from where the conversion switch has been installed</li> </ul>            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The sound may be short-circuited and the image distorted if the device vibrates</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                 |
|                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Image color/tone quality is low</li> </ul>                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The device will return to normal once vibrations stop</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                           |

| Problem               | Possible Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Countermeasure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The USB does not work | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB memory is damaged</li> <li>• USB memory has been contaminated</li> <li>• A separately purchased USB HUB is being used</li> <li>• A USB extension cable is being used</li> <li>• A USB which is not a Metal Cover Type USB Memory is being used</li> <li>• An HDD type, CF, SD Memory is being used</li> <li>• There are no music files which can be played</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Please use after formatting the USB into FAT 12/16/32 format</li> <li>• Remove any foreign substances on the contact surface of the USB memory and multimedia terminal</li> <li>• Directly connect the USB memory with the multimedia terminal on the vehicle</li> <li>• Directly connect the USB memory with the multimedia terminal on the vehicle</li> <li>• Use standard USB Memory</li> <li>• Use standard USB Memory</li> <li>• Only MP3, WMA file formats are supported. Please use only the supported music file formats</li> </ul> |
|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

|                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The iPod is not recognized even though it has been connected   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There are no titles which can be played</li> <li>• The iPod firmware version has not been properly updated</li> <li>• The iPod device does not recognize downloads</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use iTunes to download and save MP3 files into the iPod</li> <li>• Use iTunes to update the firmware version and reconnect the iPod with the device</li> <li>• Reset the iPod and reconnect with the device</li> </ul> |
| Bluetooth does not work or its limited functions are available | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bluetooth on your mobile phone is set to OFF</li> <li>• The Bluetooth connection is not made</li> </ul>                                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set it to ON</li> <li>• Make the connection active</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                          |

### **i** Information

- While operating the device, if an abnormality occurs that cannot be corrected with the above described measures, press the RESET key to reset the system.
- Press and hold the RESET key (over 1 second). The device power will turn off and the system will reset.

## FAQ

### About Pairing Mobile Phones

**Q** I cannot pair my mobile phone. What is the cause?

**A** Check to see that the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® function. Verify if Bluetooth on the cell phone is set to OFF. If so, set it to ON. If the cell phone still can't be registered, try again after turning Bluetooth off and on, or delete the device registration on the AVN and cell phone and then register the cell phone again.

**Q** What is the difference between pairing a mobile phone and connecting a mobile phone?

**A** Pairing occurs through authenticating the head unit and mobile phone. Mobile phones paired to the head unit can be connected and disconnected until the paired mobile phone is deleted from the system. Bluetooth® Handsfree features, such as making/answering calls or managing contacts, are supported only in mobile phones connected with the head unit.

**Q** What is a Passkey?

**A** A passkey is the password used to authenticate the connection between the head unit and mobile phone. The passkey only needs to be entered once when pairing the mobile phone for the first time.

The initial passkey is 0000. You can change it with

**SETUP** ► **Bluetooth** ► **Bluetooth System Info** ► **Passkey** menu options.

---

## About Making/Answering Phone Calls

---

**Q** How can I answer a call?

**A** When there is an incoming call, a notification pop-up will become displayed. To answer the incoming call, select the **Accept** button on the screen or the  key on the steering remote controller.

To reject the call, select the **Reject** button on the screen or press the  key on the steering wheel control.

**Q** What should I do if I am talking on the Handsfree but want to switch the call to the mobile phone?

**A** While on a call, press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the  key on the steering remote controller or select the **Private** button at the bottom of the Phone screen to switch the call to your mobile phone.

---

## About *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Wireless Technology/ Head Unit Use Environment

---

**Q** What is the range of my wireless connection?

**A** The wireless connection can be used within 15 yards.

**Q** How many mobile phones can be paired?

**A** It is possible to pair up to five mobile phones.

**Q** Why is call quality sometimes poor?

**A** Check the reception sensitivity of the mobile phone when call quality becomes worsened. The call quality may deteriorate when the signal strength is low. Call quality may also worsen if metal objects, such as beverage cans, are placed near the mobile phone. Check to see if there are metal objects in the vicinity of the mobile phone. The call sound and quality may differ depending on the type of mobile phone.

# Index

## A

|                                                                                  |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| About <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Wireless Technology/<br>Head Unit Use Environment ..... | 10-8 |
| About Making/<br>Answering Phone Calls .....                                     | 10-8 |
| About Pairing Mobile Phones .....                                                | 10-7 |
| About SiriusXM™ Data Service .....                                               | 7-4  |
| About Transmission and Reception of<br>Radio Waves .....                         | 4-3  |
| Accept/Reject Call .....                                                         | 3-7  |
| Accessing SiriusXM™ Data .....                                                   | 7-4  |
| Address .....                                                                    | 5-16 |
| Address Book .....                                                               | 5-21 |
| Adjusting Voice Recognition Volume ...                                           | 6-5  |
| Advanced Settings .....                                                          | 9-11 |
| App List .....                                                                   | 7-2  |
| Auto Connection Priority .....                                                   | 9-5  |
| AUX .....                                                                        | 2-37 |
| Avoid Street .....                                                               | 5-34 |

## B

|                                                   |          |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Basic Features.....                               | 5-2      |
| Basic Mode Screen.....                            | 8-2      |
| Battery Warning Message .....                     | 1-10     |
| Before Playing a USB MP3.....                     | 2-22     |
| Before Playing an MP3 Disc .....                  | 2-14     |
| Before Use .....                                  | 4-3      |
| Before Using the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Handsfree ... | 3-2      |
| Blue Link Apps Settings .....                     | 9-10     |
| Blue Link Settings .....                          | 4-7, 9-7 |
| Blue Link Voice Local Search .....                | 4-8      |
| Blue Link® Safety and Security Service ...        | 4-5      |
| <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....                    | 2-38     |
| Bluetooth Connection .....                        | 3-4      |
| Bluetooth Connection Settings .....               | 9-4      |
| Bluetooth Connections Settings .....              | 2-39     |
| Bluetooth Phone .....                             | 3-6      |
| Bluetooth Settings .....                          | 9-4      |
| Bluetooth System Information.....                 | 9-6      |

## C

|                                                              |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Call Commands .....                                          | 6-8  |
| Call History .....                                           | 3-9  |
| Camera .....                                                 | 8-5  |
| Canceling Route .....                                        | 5-31 |
| CAUTIONS upon Connecting<br><i>Bluetooth</i> ® Phone .....   | 3-3  |
| Changing Map View .....                                      | 5-3  |
| Climate Mode .....                                           | 8-2  |
| Climate Setting Screen .....                                 | 8-4  |
| Clock Settings .....                                         | 9-8  |
| Combining Voice Recognition with<br>On-Screen Commands ..... | 6-3  |
| Component Names and Functions.....                           | 1-5  |
| Connecting an External Device .....                          | 2-37 |
| Connecting <i>Bluetooth</i> Devices .....                    | 3-4  |
| Connecting with the Blue Link Center ...                     | 4-4  |
| Contacts .....                                               | 3-10 |
| Coordinates .....                                            | 5-24 |

## D

---

|                                         |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------|
| Deleting Bluetooth Devices .....        | 3-5  |
| Dial .....                              | 3-7  |
| Direct Tune .....                       | 2-8  |
| Disc .....                              | 2-11 |
| Disc CD .....                           | 2-16 |
| Disc MP3 .....                          | 2-19 |
| Disc/Content Format Compatibility ..... | 2-12 |
| Disconnecting Bluetooth Devices .....   | 3-5  |
| Display .....                           | 5-36 |
| Display Route Information .....         | 5-31 |
| Display Settings .....                  | 9-3  |
| Download Center .....                   | 7-2  |
| Driving Info .....                      | 4-6  |

## E

---

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| Editing Route .....                | 5-33 |
| Emergency .....                    | 5-20 |
| Ending Voice Recognition .....     | 6-3  |
| Extending the Listening Time ..... | 6-4  |

## F

---

|                              |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| FAQ .....                    | 10-7 |
| Favorite places .....        | 5-25 |
| Favorites .....              | 3-11 |
| “Find <Category>” List ..... | 6-15 |
| FM/AM .....                  | 2-2  |
| Freeway Exit/Entrance .....  | 5-23 |

## G

---

|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Gas Stations .....                   | 5-20 |
| General .....                        | 5-35 |
| Getting Started with Blue Link ..... | 4-4  |
| Guidance .....                       | 5-36 |

## H

---

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| HD Radio™ Mode Display Controls ... | 2-5  |
| HD Radio™ Technology .....          | 2-4  |
| Head Unit .....                     | 1-5  |
| Help Display .....                  | 6-6  |
| Home Screen .....                   | 1-11 |
| How to Connect to a Network .....   | 9-9  |
| How to start Siri .....             | 6-21 |
| How to use Siri .....               | 6-21 |

## I

---

|                                                |            |
|------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Instructions for Using Voice Recognition ..... | 6-7        |
| Intersection .....                             | 5-23       |
| iPod .....                                     | 2-30, 2-34 |

## K

---

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Key Product Features ..... | 1-4 |
| Keyboard Settings .....    | 9-9 |

## L

---

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| Language Settings ..... | 9-9  |
| Local Search .....      | 5-18 |

## M

---

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| Map Display .....       | 5-6  |
| Map Scale .....         | 5-4  |
| Media Commands .....    | 6-12 |
| Menu .....              | 5-5  |
| Modem Information ..... | 9-7  |
| My Apps .....           | 7-3  |
| My Music .....          | 2-40 |

## N

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Name and Function of Each Part ..... | 4-2       |
| Navigation Commands .....            | 6-9       |
| Navigation Settings .....            | 5-35, 9-2 |
| Navigation Volume .....              | 5-3       |
| Nearby POIs .....                    | 5-7       |

## O

|                                                           |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------|
| On-Screen Touch Controls .....                            | 1-12 |
| Operating Climate Mode.....                               | 8-2  |
| Operating Navigation Screen .....                         | 5-2  |
| Other Commands List<br>(Commands used in List/Help) ..... | 6-14 |

## P

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Pairing a New Device .....      | 3-4       |
| Phone Number .....              | 5-22      |
| Phone Projection Settings ..... | 9-10      |
| Phone Ringtone .....            | 9-5       |
| Phone Status Icons .....        | 3-6       |
| Places .....                    | 5-3, 5-15 |
| POI Categories .....            | 5-19      |

|                                                                |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Precautions for Safe Driving .....                             | 3-2  |
| Precautions Required for Successful<br>Voice Recognition ..... | 6-2  |
| Precautions upon Handling Discs .....                          | 2-11 |
| Previous Destinations .....                                    | 5-17 |
| Product Specification .....                                    | 10-2 |

## R

|                                                       |                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Radio Commands .....                                  | 6-11            |
| Rear View Mirror Switch .....                         | 4-2             |
| Restaurants .....                                     | 5-20            |
| Restrictions on Features for<br>Safety Measures ..... | 1-10            |
| Route .....                                           | 5-5, 5-31, 5-37 |
| Route Guidance .....                                  | 5-29            |
| Route Options .....                                   | 5-34            |
| Route Overview .....                                  | 5-32            |
| Route Preview .....                                   | 5-32            |
| Route Setting .....                                   | 5-26            |

## S

|                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| Save .....                                        | 5-14 |
| Screen Saver Settings.....                        | 9-10 |
| Search .....                                      | 5-15 |
| Selecting through Channel/<br>Category List ..... | 2-8  |
| Send to Car with Google .....                     | 4-6  |
| Service Activation.....                           | 9-7  |
| Setup .....                                       | 9-2  |
| Siri Eyes Free .....                              | 6-21 |
| SiriusXM™ .....                                   | 2-6  |
| SiriusXM™ Data .....                              | 7-4  |
| SiriusXM™ Fuel Price Information .....            | 7-6  |
| SiriusXM™ Movie Information .....                 | 7-10 |
| SiriusXM™ Sports Information .....                | 7-8  |
| SiriusXM™ Stock Information .....                 | 7-7  |
| SiriusXM™ Traffic Information .....               | 7-5  |
| SiriusXM™ Weather Announcement ...                | 7-4  |
| Skipping Prompt Messages .....                    | 6-5  |
| Sound Settings.....                               | 9-2  |
| Starting Blue Link Voice Local Search ...         | 4-8  |
| Starting the System for the First Time ...        | 1-9  |
| Starting Voice Recognition .....                  | 6-3  |

|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Starting/Ending and Setting          |      |
| Voice Recognition .....              | 6-3  |
| Steering-linked camera .....         | 8-5  |
| Steering Wheel Control .....         | 1-7  |
| Stolen Vehicle Recovery .....        | 4-5  |
| Supported Disc Formats .....         | 2-12 |
| Supported Image Specifications ..... | 2-24 |
| System Info .....                    | 9-11 |
| System Reset .....                   | 1-9  |
| System Update .....                  | 9-11 |

## T

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| Traffic .....                   | 5-10, 5-37 |
| Troubleshooting .....           | 5-38, 10-4 |
| Turning the System On/Off ..... | 1-9        |
| Types of Commands .....         | 6-8        |

## U

|                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------|------|
| USB .....                                    | 2-22 |
| USB Image .....                              | 2-28 |
| USB MP3 Information and<br>Precautions ..... | 2-24 |
| USB Music .....                              | 2-25 |
| Using iPod Devices .....                     | 2-30 |
| Using the Menu During a Phone Call...        | 3-8  |

## V

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle Diagnostics .....             | 4-7 |
| Viewing Menu .....                    | 2-8 |
| Voice Commands .....                  | 6-8 |
| Voice Recognition Screen Overview ... | 6-6 |
| Voice Recognition Settings .....      | 9-8 |

## W

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Warnings and Cautions .....                              | 1-2 |
| What is Blue Link Voice Local Search?                    | 4-8 |
| What Is Blue Link? .....                                 | 4-3 |
| What is <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Wireless<br>Technology? ..... | 3-2 |
| What Is Telematics? .....                                | 4-3 |
| What is Voice Recognition? .....                         | 6-2 |
| Wi-Fi Settings .....                                     | 9-8 |
| Wi-Fi Settings Screen .....                              | 9-8 |

## Z

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Zoom In/Zoom Out ..... | 5-4 |
|------------------------|-----|

## Important Safety Information

Before using your Multimedia system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

### **Keep User's Guide in Vehicle**

When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Multimedia system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

### **Warning**

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions as you may to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

# General Operation

## Voice Command Control

Functions within the Multimedia system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

## Prolonged Views of Screen

Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

## Volume Setting

Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

## Navigation Features

Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow all instructions on safety information.

## **Distraction Hazard**

Some navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

## **Let Your Judgment Prevail**

Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

## **Route Safety**

Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

## **Potential Map Inaccuracy**

Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

## **Emergency Services**

Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are contained in the map database for navigation features.

## **Use of Speech Recognition Functions**

**Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.**

## FCC Warning

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Caution: Any changes or modifications to this device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void your authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum 20 cm between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be collocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter unless authorized to do so by the FCC.

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

B1EUH01  
(영어 I 미국) 표준4세대

# GENESIS G80

QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE



B1MS7-B5007



GENESIS

Thank you for purchasing this multimedia system.

This user's manual explains how to use the GENESIS Motors multimedia system. Before using the product, read the contents of this user's manual carefully and use this product safely.

- The screens shown in this manual may differ with the actual screens of the product.
- The design and specification of this product may change without prior notification for product improvement.
- When transferring the vehicle to another individual, include this user's manual so that the next driver can continue its use.

---

## Precaution for safe usage

---

- Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.
- Do not operate the multimedia system while driving.
- Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the multimedia system.
- Do not watch the screen for prolonged periods of time while driving.
- Set the volume to a level which allows the driver to be aware of external conditions.
- Do not operate the multimedia system for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle ignition in ACC. Such operations may lead to battery discharge.
- Be cautious not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device.
- Do not cause severe shock to the device. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch panel.
- In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or service center.
- When cleaning the touch screen, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, ammonia, benzene, thinners, etc.) as such materials may damage the device panel or cause color and quality deterioration.

All Map Database cannot be copied without permission.

Important Notice : This is protected by U.S. copyright laws. All rights not expressly granted are reserved.

You may not otherwise reproduce, modify and distribute the content without HYUNDAI MnSoft, Inc's prior written consent.

- SiriusXM service requires a subscription, sold separately, after 3-month trial included with vehicle purchase. If you decide to continue your SiriusXM service at the end of your trial subscription, the plan you choose will automatically renew and bill at then-current rates until you call Sirius XM at 1-866-635-2349 to cancel. See our Customer Agreement for complete terms at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com). Programming subject to change. Sirius satellite service is available only to those at least 18 and older in the 48 contiguous USA, D.C., and PR (with coverage limitations). Traffic information not available in all markets. See [siriusxm.com/traffic](http://siriusxm.com/traffic) for details. Sirius, XM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc.

---

## WARNING

---

- Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.
-

## GENESIS Brand Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy

Your GENESIS Brand vehicle may be equipped with technologies and services that use information collected, generated, recorded or stored by the vehicle. GENESIS Brand has created a Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy to explain how these technologies and services collect use and share this information.

You may read our Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy on the Hyundaiusa.com website at: <https://www.hyundaiusa.com/owner-privacy-policy.aspx>

If you would like to receive a hard copy of our Vehicle Owner Privacy Policy, please contact our Customer Connect Center at:

Genesis Motors USA/Phoenix  
P.O. Box 83835  
Phoenix, AZ 85071-3835  
877-378-8727  
[consumeraffairs@hmausa.com](mailto:consumeraffairs@hmausa.com)

GENESIS Brand's Customer Connect Center representatives are available Monday through Friday, between the hours of 5:00 AM and 7:00 PM PST and Saturday and Sunday between 6:30 AM and 3:00 PM PST (English). For Customer Connect Center assistance in Spanish or Korean, representatives are available Monday through Friday between 6:30 AM and 3:00 PM PST.

# Table of Contents

---

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| Controls and Functions.....   | 3  |
| On-Screen Touch Controls..... | 7  |
| Setup.....                    | 8  |
| Home Screen.....              | 9  |
| FM/AM.....                    | 12 |
| HD Radio™ Technology.....     | 14 |
| SiriusXM™ .....               | 15 |
| Disc.....                     | 18 |
| USB.....                      | 22 |
| iPod .....                    | 25 |
| AUX.....                      | 27 |
| Bluetooth Audio.....          | 28 |
| My Music.....                 | 29 |
| Bluetooth.....                | 31 |
| Voice Recognition.....        | 36 |
| FAQ.....                      | 49 |
| Download Center.....          | 52 |
| SiriusXM Data.....            | 54 |
| Navigation .....              | 60 |

## Head Unit



| Name |                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    |  PWR/<br>VOL | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When power is off, press to turn power on</li> <li>When power is on, press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) to turn power off</li> <li>When power is on, press quickly (under 0.8 seconds) to turn Audio off</li> <li>Turn left/right to control volume</li> </ul> |
| 2    |              | Press to insert or eject disc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 3    | RESET                                                                                         | Resets the system settings. (Preset radio channels and other data will not be deleted)                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4    | SETUP                                                                                         | Displays the Setup mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 5    |  TUNE       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: changes the frequency</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: changes the channel</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: changes the track, file or title changes the track, file or title (except USB Image, Bluetooth Audio and AUX)</li> </ul>         |
| 6    | RADIO                                                                                         | Converts to FM/AM/SiriusXM™ mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time the key is pressed, the mode is changed in order of FM → AM → SiriusXM™ → FM</li> </ul>                                                                                                                            |

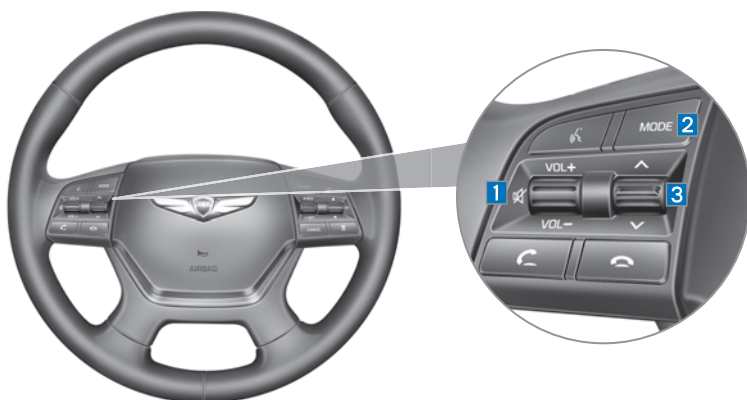
# Controls and Functions



| Name |                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7    | MEDIA                                         | Converts to MEDIA mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the media is not connected or the CD player is not available for this model, MEDIA mode will not be activated.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 8    | BLUELINK                                      | Displays the Blue Link mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 9    | MAP   VOICE                                   | Displays the map for the current position                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 10   | NAVI                                          | Takes you to the menu screen where you can find your destination and set the route.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 11   | <div> <div>SEEK</div> <div>TRACK</div> </div> | <p>When key is pressed shortly. (under 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: plays previous/next frequency</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: plays the previous/next channel</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: changes the track, file or title (except USB Image and AUX)</li> </ul> <p>When key is pressed and held. (over 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: continuously changes the frequency until the key is released</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: continuously changes the channel until the key is released and plays the current channel</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: rewinds or fastforwards the track or file (except USB Image, Bluetooth Audio and AUX)</li> </ul> |
| 12   | SD MAP                                        | SD card insert slot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 13   | PHONE                                         | Takes user to phone screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 14   | INFO                                          | Displays the information mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

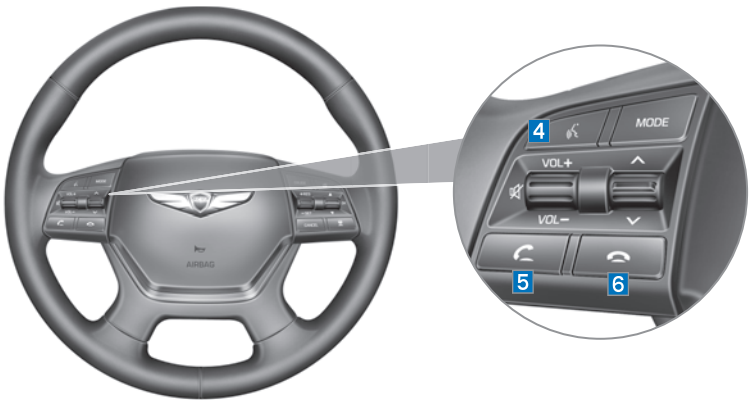
※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

## Steering Wheel Control



| Name                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> <div> VOL+<br/>VOL- </div> | Controls the volume                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>2</b> <div>MODE</div>            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time this key is pressed, mode is changed in the order FM → AM → SiriusXM™ → Disc → USB Music or iPod → AUX → Bluetooth Audio → My Music</li> <li>If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled</li> <li>Press and hold the key (more than 0.8 seconds) to turn the Audio system on/off</li> <li>When power is off, press the key to turn power back on</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>3</b> <div> ^<br/>v </div>       | <p>When keys are pressed quickly. (less than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: searches broadcast channels saved to Presets</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: changes the track, file or title (except USB Image, AUX)</li> </ul> <p>When keys are pressed and held. (more than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FM/AM mode: automatically searches broadcast frequencies</li> <li>SiriusXM™ mode: automatically searches broadcast channels</li> <li>MEDIA (Disc/USB/iPod/My Music) mode: quickly looks up songs (excluding USB images, AUX and Bluetooth audio files)</li> </ul> |

# Controls and Functions



| Name |                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4    |    | <p>When pressed quickly. (less than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Activates voice recognition</li></ul> <p>When pressed and held. (more than 0.8 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ends voice recognition</li><li>• Activates Siri Eyes Free</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 5    |   | <p>When pressed quickly. (less than 1.2 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When pressed in the dial screen, makes a call</li><li>• When pressed in the incoming call screen, answers the call</li><li>• When pressed during call waiting, switches to waiting call (Call Waiting)</li></ul> <p>When pressed and held. (more than 1.2 seconds)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When pressed in Bluetooth® Hands-free, redials the last call</li><li>• When pressed during a Bluetooth® Hands-free call, switches call back to mobile phone (Private)</li><li>• When pressed while calling on the mobile phone, switches call back to Bluetooth® Hands-free (operates only when Bluetooth® Hands-free is connected)</li></ul> |
| 6    |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When pressed during a call, ends the phone call</li><li>• When pressed in the incoming call screen, rejects the call</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Learn how to touch the screen to operate the system.

## Select

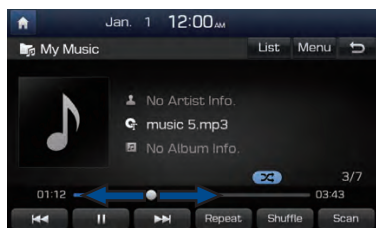
Tap lightly on a menu or an item to select it.

### NOTICE

- The system will not recognize your touch if you wear a glove or other non-conductive material. Touch the screen using your finger, an electrostatic touch-screen glove, or a stylus pen.

## Drag & Drop

Select a menu or item you want, then drag and drop it to where you want to place it.

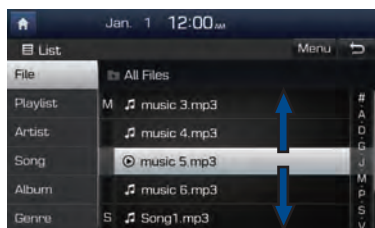


Drag or touch the slider along the play bar in the music screens to jump to the point that you want to play from. However, the CD player does not support drag function.

### Information

- Music screens for Disc CD and Disc MP3 do not support this function.

## Flick (Quick Scrolling)



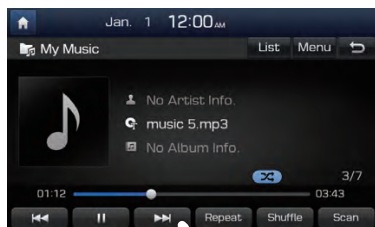
Quickly moves up and down in the list.

### NOTICE

- Moving the list when there are many items will display a handler on the right of the display. You can easily move many items at a time with the handler

## Press and Hold

Selecting the  and  buttons in the music player will fast forward/rewind the music.



# Setup

Setup is the screen to control system settings of the Multimedia System.

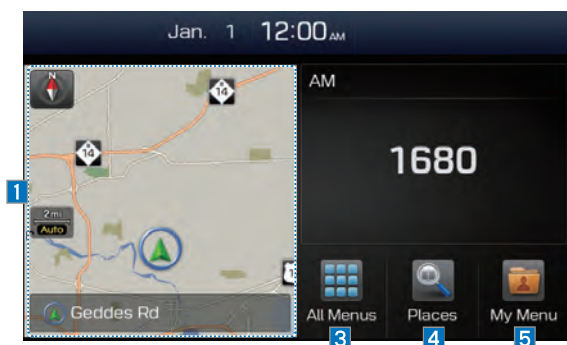
To enter the screen, select the

**SETUP** key of the device or the

**Setup** button in All Menus.



## Controls Menu Configuration for the Home Screen



| Features                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Navigation Widget | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides a brief view of the navigation map and the route screen.</li> <li>Touch any area on the screen to move to the navigation screen.</li> </ul> |
| <b>2</b> AV Widget         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shows brief information on the radio media current playing.</li> <li>Touch the area to move to the mode for what you are listening to.</li> </ul>    |
| <b>3</b> All Menus         | Shows all of the items in the system menu.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>4</b> Places            | Directly moves to the screen where you can search for your destination.                                                                                                                     |
| <b>5</b> My Menu           | Add your favorite menu items to have quick and easy access to them.                                                                                                                         |

# Home Screen

## Information Display on the Status Bar

Displays the date and time, along with the system status shown by the various icons to the right of the clock.

The icons in the following table indicate the various types of system status details and events.

|             | AV-Mute                                                                           | Navigation-Mute                                                                   | Making a call and Bluetooth connection                                            |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | 2G/3G/Wi-Fi                                                                       |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ICON        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Description | Mute AV sound                                                                     | Mute Navigation sound                                                             | Bluetooth phone remaining battery                                                 | Handsfree connection                                                              | Making a call using Bluetooth phone                                               | Bluetooth phone reception sensitivity                                             | Wi-Fi is connected                                                                |
| ICON        |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |  |                                                                                   |  |  |
| Description |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | Connecting to music stream                                                        |                                                                                   | Blue Link received signal strength indication                                     | Connecting to Wi-Fi                                                               |
| ICON        |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |  |  |                                                                                   |  |
| Description |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | Handsfree+streaming connection                                                    | Mute Bluetooth phone microphone                                                   |                                                                                   | 2G/3G data connection (displayed only when connected to a 2G/3G data network)     |
| ICON        |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |  |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |  |
| Description |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | Downloading contacts/recent calls                                                 |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | LTE data connection (displayed only when connected to a LTE data network)         |

### Information

- Received signal strength indicator of Blue Link and 2G/3G/Wi-Fi/LTE information are displayed only in the devices that support the telematics system.

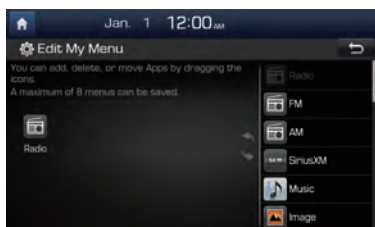
## Adding Your Favorite Menu Items to My Menu

From the Home screen, select

**My Menu** ► and then **Edit**.

From the Edit My Menu screen, select menu items from the list on the right, then drag and drop them to a desired place on the left.

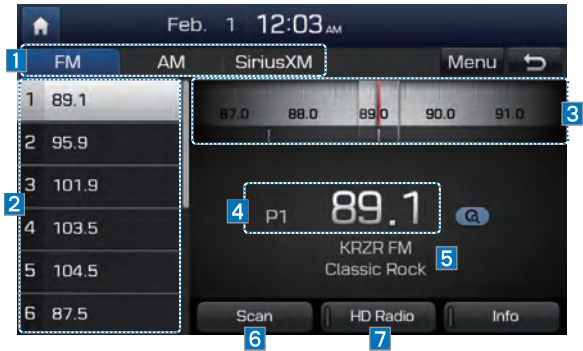
To remove the item from My Menu, draft item from the left and drop them on the right.



### **i** Information

- Up to eight items can be added to My Menu.

You can access the radio player either by pressing the **RADIO** hard key or by selecting the Radio menu option from All Menus on the Home screen.



## **i** Information

- If you press the **RADIO** hard key when the power is off, then the power will turn on and a radio broadcast will be tuned up.
- If you are in the FM/AM mode, select the FM/AM radio widget from the Home screen to access the radio player.

| Features                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode Display      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Displays current operating mode</li><li>• If select wanted mode tap, it will change to selected mode in Radio</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>2</b> Preset            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Shows saved presets for user selection</li><li>• After selecting frequency → press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the preset button. A 'beep' will sound and the frequency is saved to the selected preset button</li></ul> <p><b>i</b> A total of 24 frequencies with 12 preset frequencies each for FM/AM modes can be saved.</p> |
| <b>3</b> Frequency Bar     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flick the frequency bar left/right to search for available radio channels to the left or right of the current channel</li><li>• Dragging: Drag the frequency bar to the left/right to find the radio channel that you want</li></ul>                                                                                             |
| <b>4</b> Frequency         | Displays the current frequency                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>5</b> Broadcast station | Displays the current broadcast station name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>6</b> Scan              | Plays frequencies with superior reception for 5 seconds each                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>7</b> HD Radio          | When the HD Radio soft button is ON (the blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio signals will be received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



| Features                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>8</b> Info                        | <p>Turns the Radio Text information on and off</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the ON Text On button is displayed (Text off state), information will not be displayed even if there is information being transmitted from the broadcast station</li> <li>• If the Off Text Off button is displayed (Text on state), then broadcast information will be displayed. Information may not be displayed if there is no information being transmitted from the broadcast station</li> </ul> |
| <b>9</b> Menu                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Autostore: Saves frequencies with good reception to Preset buttons</li> <li>• While Auto Store is operating, pressing the Auto Store button again will cancel the function and play the previous frequency.</li> <li>• Preset Scan: plays preset frequencies for 5 or 10 seconds each</li> <li>• HD on: 10 seconds</li> <li>• HD off: 5 seconds</li> </ul>                                                                                                   |
| <b>10</b> Scan/Auto Scan/Preset Scan | Displays an activated mode from the Scan/Auto Scan/Preset Scan modes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>11</b> SEEK/ TRACK                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pressing this button briefly (less than 0.8 seconds): seeks the previous/next frequency</li> <li>• Pressing and holding this button (longer than 0.8 seconds): moves quickly through all of the frequencies. From the moment that you release the button, the system will seek the next available frequency</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>12</b> TUNE                       | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to manually seek available frequencies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FM: Increment/decrement by 200 kHz</li> <li>• AM: Increment/decrement by 10 kHz</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## HD Radio™ Mode Display Controls



| Name                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> HD Channel Number                     | Analog station and corresponding HD Radio channel number saved in the preset list                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>2</b> Broadcast Info                        | Displays detailed information about the current broadcast. (the details of the information shown are different depending on whether the Info button is selected)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b> HD Radio                              | When the HD Radio soft button is ON (the blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio signals will be received                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>4</b> HD Radio™ Reception & Channel buttons | <p>Displays main HD Radio™ channels and used to directly select the current available channels</p> <p><b>i</b> HD Radio technology allows AM and FM radio stations to transmit audio and data using a digital signal. The HD Radio format allows stations to simultaneously broadcast one or more different programs in addition to the program being transmitted on the station's analog channel. When the HD Radio soft button on the screen is ON (blue indicator on the HD Radio button is illuminated), HD Radio reception will become active whenever a broadcast channel sends an HD Radio signal and when the vehicle is in areas where the signal reception is strong. If multiple HD Radio programs are available, a soft button for each channel will appear on the screen allowing you to select from HD1, HD2, etc.</p> |

You can access the radio player either by pressing the **RADIO** key or by selecting the Radio menu option from All Menus on the Home screen. Select the SiriusXM™ tab from the radio player.



### **i** Information

- If you press the **RADIO** key when the power is off, then the power will turn on and a radio broadcast will be tuned up.
- If you are in the SiriusXM™ mode, select the SiriusXM™ radio widget from the Home screen to access the radio player.
- When the power is off, pressing the **RADIO** key will turn the power on and play a SiriusXM™ Radio broadcast.

| Features               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode Display  | Displays current operating mode<br>If you press FM, AM or SiriusXM, mode will change to selected one in Radio                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>2</b> Preset        | Shows saved presets for user selection<br>After selecting frequency → press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the preset button. A 'beep' will sound and the frequency is saved to the selected preset button<br><b>i</b> A total of 18 frequencies for SiriusXM™ modes can be saved. |
| <b>3</b> Channel Logo  | Displays the current channel logo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>4</b> Channel Info  | Displays the current channel number and name                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>5</b> Contents Info | Displays the artist, title and other information about the current playing song                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

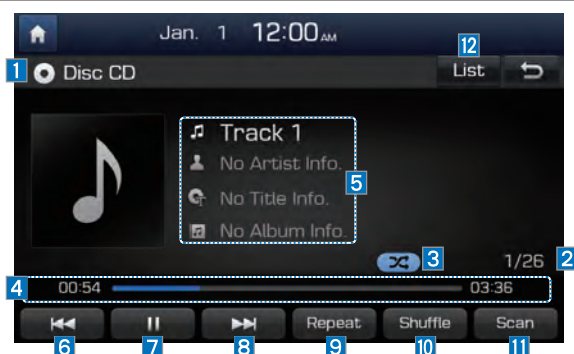


| Features                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 Category Info               | Displays the current playing category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 7 Scan                        | Plays all receivable channels for 10 seconds each                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 8 Direct Tune                 | Used to search for channels by entering channel numbers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 9 Category                    | If you press Category, when search channels through SEEK, Tune and Scan, search it in the current category.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 10 Category Selection Buttons | Used to select the previous/next category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 11 Play Live                  | It will change to listening live broadcast mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 12 Skip Backward              | Repeats the previously broadcasted program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Holding for less than 0.8 seconds: moves to the previous segment</li><li>• Holding for longer than 0.8 seconds: moves to the previous 5 seconds</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                  |
| 13 Play Pause                 | Pauses/plays the currently broadcasting program.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 14 Skip Forward               | Moves to the next segment.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 15 List                       | Displays SiriusXM™ Radio Categories/Channel Lists                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 16 Menu                       | What's on My Preset?<br>The program schedule saved in my preset. (For more details, see Section 2.5. Viewing Menu.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Featured Favorite</li></ul> Theme channels recommended by SiriusXM™. (For more details, see Section 2.5. Viewing Menu.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Preset Scan</li></ul> Plays preset frequencies for 5 seconds each. |



| Features             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>17</b> SEEK/TRACK | <p>When key is pressed quickly. (under 0.8 seconds)<br/>Plays the previous/next channel</p> <p>When key is pressed and held. (over 0.8 seconds)<br/>Continuously changes the channel until the key is released<br/>and plays the current channel</p> |
| <b>18</b> TUNE       | Changes the channel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Disc CD



| Name                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                 | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>2</b> Track Index          | Shows the current track/total tracks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/ Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>4</b> Play Time            | Displays the current play time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>5</b> Play Info            | Displays track/artist/title/album information                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>6</b> Previous Track       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>7</b> Play/Pause           | Plays/pauses the current track                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>8</b> Next Track           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>9</b> Repeat               | Repeats the current track<br>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating the current track → and turning repeat off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>10</b> Shuffle             | Plays disc tracks in random order<br>Select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle all → and turning shuffle off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>11</b> Scan                | Scans the beginning parts of disc tracks (approx. 10 seconds per track)<br>Select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan all → and turning scan off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>12</b> List                | Moves to the track list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

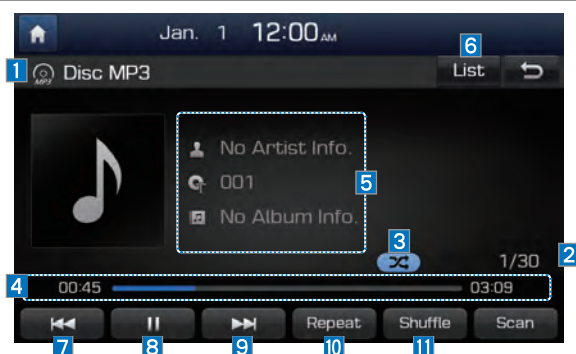


| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>13</b> TUNE | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob and search a desired track. When the track name is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.</p> <p><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p> |

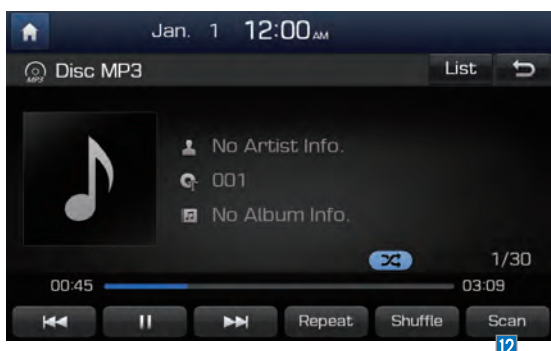
#### **i** Information

- Album artwork is not available in the Disc CD and Disc MP3 mode.

## Disc MP3



| Name                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                    | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>2</b> File Index              | Shows the current MP3 file/total number of MP3 files                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/<br>Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>4</b> Play Time               | Displays the current play time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>5</b> Song Info               | Display artist, title, album info for current song                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>6</b> List                    | Moves to the list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>7</b> Previous File           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause              | Plays/pauses the current track                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>9</b> Next File               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>10</b> Repeat                 | Repeats the current song or all songs in the folder<br>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating 1 song → repeating folder → and turning repeat off<br><b>i</b> Repeat 1 song: repeats the current song<br>Repeat Folder: repeats songs in the folder                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>11</b> Shuffle                | Plays files in the folder or in the disc in random order<br>Select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle folder → shuffle all → and turning shuffle off<br><b>i</b> Shuffle folder: plays songs in the folder in random order<br>Shuffle All: plays songs in the disc in random order.                                                                                                                                              |

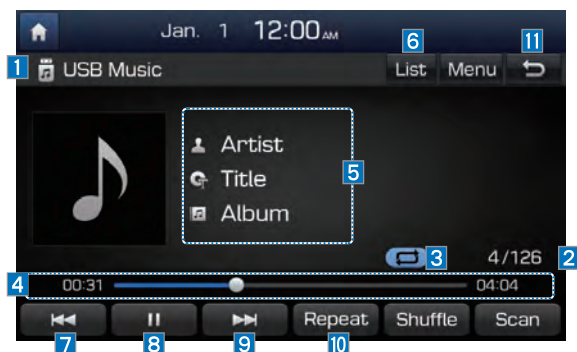


| Name           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>12</b> Scan | <p>Scans the beginning parts of MP3 files (approx. 10 seconds per file)</p> <p>Select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan folder → scan all → and turning scan off</p> <p><b>i</b> Scan Folder: scans tracks in the current folder<br/>Scan All: scans all tracks in the disc</p> |
| <b>13</b> TUNE | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.</p> <p><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p> |

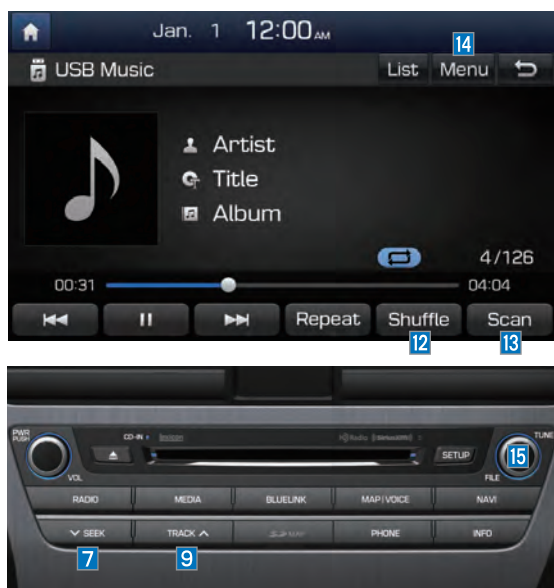
### **i** Information

- Album artwork is not available in the Disc CD and Disc MP3 mode.

## USB Music



| Features                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                  | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>2</b> File Index            | Shows the current file/total files within the USB                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/ Shuffle/ Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>4</b> Play Time             | Displays the current play time/total play time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>5</b> Song Info             | Displays the artist/title/album info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>6</b> List                  | Moves to the list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>7</b> Previous File         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause            | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>9</b> Next File             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>10</b> Repeat               | <p>Repeats the current file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song, repeating folder and turning repeat off</li> <li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off</li> </ul>                                                                    |

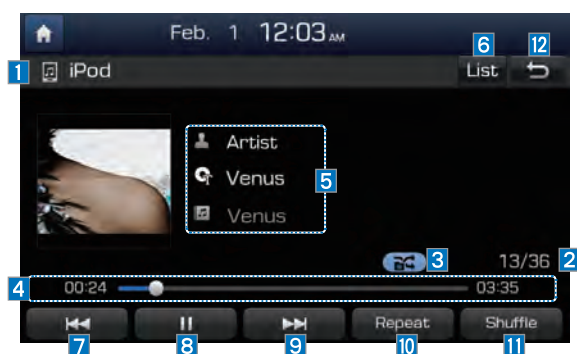


| Features              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>11</b> Back Button | Converts to basic mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>12</b> Shuffle     | <p>Plays files in random order</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle folder, shuffle all and turning shuffle off</li> <li>If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle category and turning shuffle off</li> </ul>                     |
| <b>13</b> Scan        | <p>Scans the beginning parts of USB files (approx. 10 seconds per file)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan folder, scan all and turning scan off</li> <li>If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan category and turning scan off</li> </ul> |
| <b>14</b> Menu        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Save to My Music: you can save the current track to My Music. You can play saved track from My Music without USB. Access to My Music in the Media mode.</li> <li>Delete Current File: a selected file can be deleted. Deleted file can be found in the "to_Delete" folder</li> <li><b>i</b> This function is only supported when USB format is compatible with FAT16 or FAT32.</li> </ul>     |
| <b>15</b> TUNE        | Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## USB Image



| Features               | Description                                                    |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Mode                 | Displays current operating mode                                |
| 2 Folder/File Name     | Displays folder name where image is located                    |
| 3 File Index           | Shows the current file/total files within the USB              |
| 4 Slideshow            | Images as slideshow in 5, 10, 20, 30 second intervals          |
| 5 Rotate               | Rotate image in clockwise direction                            |
| 6 Info                 | Shows the file name, resolution and file type of current image |
| 7 Adjust Image Size    | Enlarge/reduce (zoom-in/zoom-out) image size                   |
| 8 List                 | Moves to the list screen                                       |
| 9 Previous/ Next image | Swipe image left or right to see Previous/Next image           |



| Features                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode           | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>2</b> Song Index     | Shows the current song/total songs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/Shuffle | From Repeat/Shuffle, displays the current operating function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>4</b> Play Time      | Displays the current play time/total play time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>5</b> Song Info      | Displays the artist/song title/album info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>6</b> List           | Moves to the list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>7</b> Previous File  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time)</li> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause     | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>9</b> Next File      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>10</b> Repeat        | Repeats the current file<br>Select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating 1 track, and turning repeat off                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>11</b> Shuffle       | Plays files in random order<br>When Selecting <b>Shuffle</b> button, it changes to shuffle category → deactivate shuffle then repeat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shuffle Category: Shuffle song in the current category</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>12</b> Back Button   | Move to home/previous mode screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



| Features       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>13</b> TUNE | <p>Turn the  TUNE knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the  TUNE knob to play the track.</p> <p> If the  TUNE knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p> |

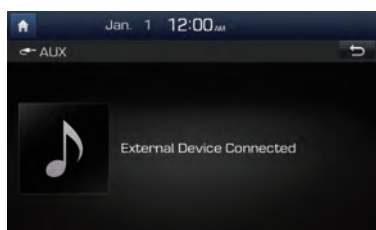
---

## Connecting an External Device

---

If an external device connector is connected with the AUX terminal, then AUX mode will automatically operate. Once the connector is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.

- AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.
- The AUX volume can also be controlled separately through the connected device.



---

### NOTICE

---

- If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.
  - When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.
- 



※ The actual feature in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

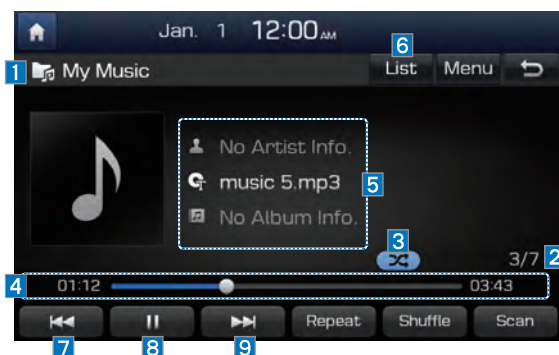
# Bluetooth Audio



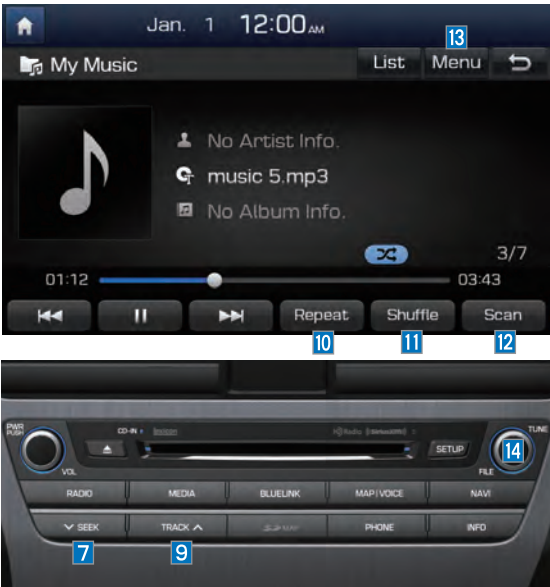
| Features               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode          | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>2</b> Phone Name    | Displays name of connected phone                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>3</b> Artist Info   | Name of current artist                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>4</b> Title         | Name of current song                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>5</b> Previous File | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to the previous file</li> <li>• If play time is over than 3 seconds, plays the current file from the beginning</li> </ul> <i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone |
| <b>6</b> Play/Pause    | Plays/Pauses Bluetooth Audio                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>7</b> Next File     | Moves to the next file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>8</b> Repeat        | Repeats the current file<br><i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>9</b> Shuffle       | Plays files in random order<br><i>i</i> This function may differ depending on the model of mobile phone                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>10</b> Connections  | Moves to the Bluetooth Settings. You can pair a new device or change/delete paired device(s)                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| SEEK/TRACK             | Plays the previous/next file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| TUNE                   |  TUNE is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                             |

## **i** Information

- Artist info and Title may not be supported by mobile phone



| Features                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Mode                | Displays current operating mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>2</b> File Index          | Shows the current file/total files                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>3</b> Repeat/Shuffle/Scan | From Repeat/Shuffle/Scan, displays the current operating function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>4</b> Play Time           | Displays the current play time/total play time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>5</b> Song Info           | Displays the artist/title/album info                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>6</b> List                | Moves to the list screen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>7</b> Previous File       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the previous file or play the current file from the beginning (Depends on the play time) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If play time is less than 3 seconds, moves to previous file</li> <li>- If play time is more than 3 seconds, play the current file from the beginning</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it rewinds the track</li> </ul> |
| <b>8</b> Play/Pause          | Plays/pauses the current file                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>9</b> Next File           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If button is pressed (less than 0.8 seconds): moves to the next file</li> <li>• If button is pressed (over than 0.8 seconds): it fast-forwards the track</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



| Features   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 Repeat  | <p>Repeats the current file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off.</li><li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Repeat</b> button to switch between repeating one song and turning repeat off</li></ul>   |
| 11 Shuffle | <p>Plays files in random order</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle and turning shuffle off</li><li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Shuffle</b> button to switch between shuffle and turning shuffle off</li></ul>                   |
| 12 Scan    | <p>Scans the beginning parts of files (approx. 10seconds per file)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If select the song in the file tab on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan and turning scan off</li><li>• If select the song in the other tabs on the list screen: select the <b>Scan</b> button to switch between scan and turning scan off</li></ul> |
| 13 Menu    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Add to Playlist: Adds the current song to the Playlist<br/>Playlist is placed on the left tab in the list</li><li>• Delete Current File: Deletes the current track from My Music.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 14 TUNE    | <p>Turn the <b>TUNE</b> knob to search a desired track. If the desired track is displayed, press the <b>TUNE</b> knob to play the track.</p> <p><b>i</b> If the <b>TUNE</b> knob is not pressed within 5 seconds of searching tracks, the track info for the current track is restored.</p>                                                                                                            |

## Bluetooth Connection

### Pairing a New Device

Before you can use the Bluetooth feature, you must first pair/connect your mobile phone to your car.

Up to 5 Bluetooth devices can be paired.

Only one Bluetooth device can be connected at a time.

### Pairing a New Device by Selecting Phone/Call

Press the **PHONE** key or 

key in the steering wheel control. ►

Pair your car after your mobile phone detects the Bluetooth device. ►

Enter the passkey or accept the authorization popup. ► Connect Bluetooth.

### Pairing a New Device Through the Phone Settings

Press the **SETUP** key. ► Select

**Bluetooth**. ► Select **Bluetooth Connection**.

► Select **Add New**. ► Pair your car

after your mobile phone detects the Bluetooth device. ► Enter the passkey or accept the authorization popup. ► Connect Bluetooth.



The default passkey is 0000.

The Vehicle Name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.

### Connecting Bluetooth Devices

Connects the Bluetooth devices that you add.

### Connecting Devices by Selecting Phone/Call

Press the **PHONE** key or 

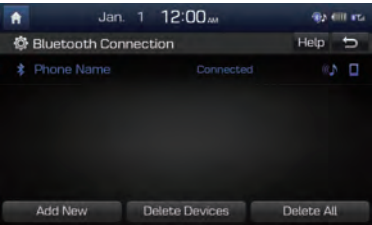
key in the steering wheel control. ►

Select the name of the device to connect. ► Connect Bluetooth.



## Connecting Devices Through the Phone Settings

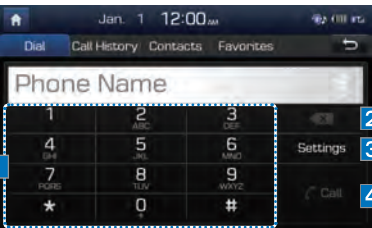
Press the **SETUP** key. ▶ Select **Bluetooth**. ▶ Select **Bluetooth Connection**.  
▶ Select the name of the device to connect. ▶ Connect Bluetooth.



## Dial

Dials a call after the Bluetooth devices are connected.

Press the **PHONE** key, and then **Dial**.

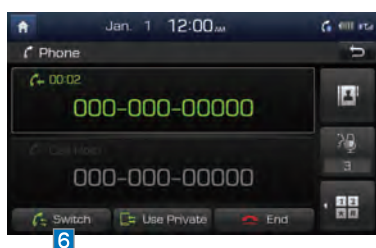
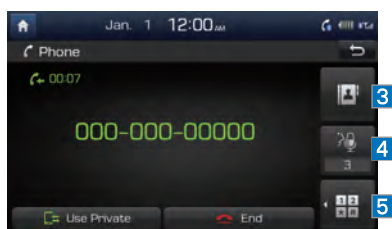


| Name       | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Keypad   | Use the keypad to enter the phone number that you want to call. Press and hold the last number of a speed dial to dial a number that you added to the Speed Dial list in the phone |
| 2 Delete   | Deletes the numbers that you entered.                                                                                                                                              |
| 3 Settings | Moves to a screen of Phone Settings.                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 Call     | Makes a call after you dial a number and select CALL. If the number is listed in Dialed Calls, you can select the number and press CALL to automatically dial that number again.   |

## i Information

- Some types of mobile phones may not support the Speed Dial function.

## Using the Menu During a Phone Call

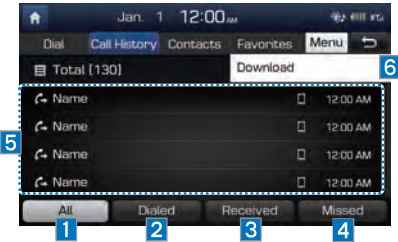


When making a call, you can use the following menu items.

| Name                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Use Private     | Switches a voice call from the car Hands-free to the mobile phone.                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>2</b> End             | Ends a call.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>3</b> Contacts        | Displays the Contacts list.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>4</b> Outgoing Volume | Displays the Mic Volume settings. You can adjust the in-call volume that the other party hears (level 1 - 5).                                                                                                             |
| <b>5</b> Keypad          | Moves to a screen for entering ARS numbers.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>6</b> Switch          | Switches to a call on hold, if any. You can also switch calls by selecting the number in the Information Display. The Switch function switches the current call to a waiting call in order to answer a new incoming call. |

## Call History

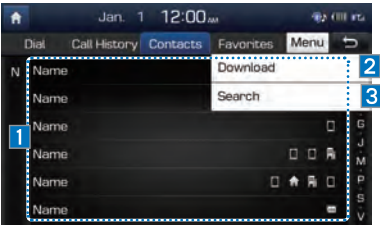
Press **PHONE** key, and then  
Call History .



| Name                  | Description                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> All          | Lists the all call history.                                                 |
| <b>2</b> Dialed       | Lists the calls that you made.                                              |
| <b>3</b> Received     | Lists the calls that you have received.                                     |
| <b>4</b> Missed       | Lists the calls you missed.                                                 |
| <b>5</b> Call History | Displays all of your call history. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| <b>6</b> Download     | Downloads the call history information from your mobile phone.              |

## Contacts

Press **PHONE** key, and then  
Contacts .

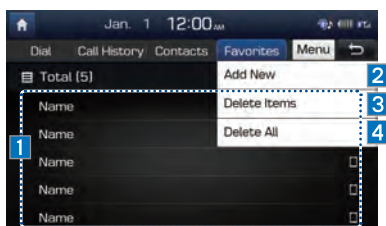


| Name                   | Description                                                    |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Contacts List | The list of Contacts. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| <b>2</b> Download      | Downloads contacts from your mobile phone.                     |
| <b>3</b> Search        | Searches Contacts.                                             |

## Favorites

Press the **PHONE** key, and then

**Favorites**.



| Name                  | Description                                                                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Favorites    | Lists the phone numbers saved as Favorites. Select from the list to dial the number. |
| <b>2</b> Add New      | Adds a new number to Favorites.                                                      |
| <b>3</b> Delete Items | Deletes numbers that you select from Favorites.                                      |
| <b>4</b> Delete All   | Deletes all of the numbers from Favorites.                                           |

## Precautions Required for Successful Voice Recognition

1. Voice recognition supports only the commands that are displayed on the screen and written in the User's Guide.
2. To ensure the correct recognition and execution of your command, say your command when you hear the beep after a voice prompt.
3. Voice recognition automatically ends if:
  - 1) A call is incoming or outgoing
  - 2) A media (USB or iPod, etc.) is connected or disconnected
  - 3) The front or rear view camera is operated (optional)
  - 4) The car engine starts or stops
  - 5) A system key, such as **RADIO** key or **MEDIA** key is selected
  - 6) An emergency occurs, for example re-searching for the route after the navigation route has been lost
4. The microphone that recognizes your voice is located over the head part in the driver's seat. To make your commands better understood, keep your body straight in the driver's seat when speaking the command.
5. Speaking naturally and clearly will ensure better recognition of your voice commands.
6. In the following cases voice recognition will be affected by ambient noise.
  - 1) The sound of the wind if any window or the sun roof is open.
  - 2) High speed blower from the air vents. Set climate control to blow lower than level 3.
  - 3) Vibrations from passing through a tunnel.
  - 4) Vibrations from driving on an uneven road.
  - 5) Storms and heavy rain.

# Starting/Ending and Setting Voice Recognition

## Starting Voice Recognition

Press the  key briefly (less than 0.8 seconds) on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition.



## Ending Voice Recognition

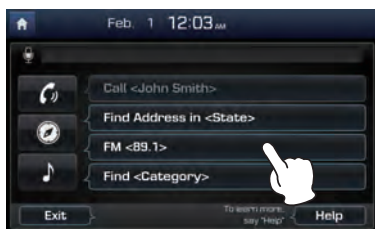
1. Select “Exit” to the left of the bottom to end voice recognition.
2. Press and hold (more than 0.8 seconds) the  key on the steering wheel control to end voice recognition.



## Combining Voice Recognition with On-Screen Commands

After pressing the  key, say a command after the beep. The voice recognition system will execute the desired operation after understanding the command. Alternatively, you may touch any of the corresponding commands on the screen while the Voice Recognition system is in operation.

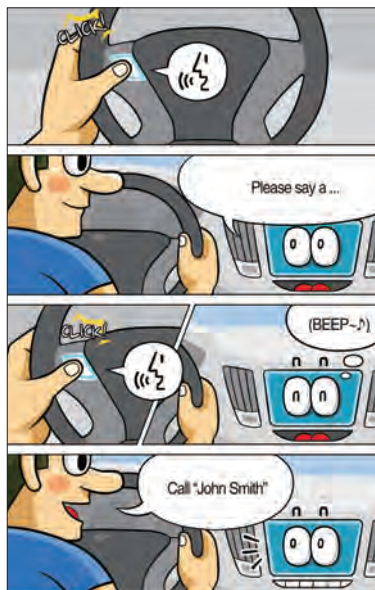
Combining voice recognition with available on-screen commands is useful when the system is taking longer than expected or the voice command did not execute as desired.



## Skipping Prompt Messages

When you hear the prompt message, the voice recognition icon on the steering wheel remote control to skip the message and go directly to listening mode to say your command.

This results in faster operation when you feel the message is too long or you already know the command to use.



### **i** Information

- Refer to Part 9 for instructions on how to change the Voice Recognition Settings.

# Voice Recognition Screen Overview



| Name                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Representative Commands                 | Display the representative commands.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 Not available command                   | Displays commands that are not available due to a failure in meeting the conditions for using them and thus need additional settings. The conditions required for using them will be described briefly under each command.                                                                                |
| 3 Voice recognition status icons          |  Standby<br> Voice guidance<br> Voice command process |
| 4 User's speaking volume being recognized | Displays the voice command volume in real time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 5 Recognized results                      | Displays the voice recognition result.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 Help                                    | Displays all available help commands in a tree format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 7 Exit                                    | Ends the voice recognition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Voice Commands

---

### Types of Commands

---

Voice recognition commands are classified as “Global Commands” and “Local Commands.”

1. Global Commands (●): Commands that can be used immediately after activating voice recognition.
2. Local Commands (○): Commands that can be used when a multimedia, navigation, or Bluetooth call is running, or displayed on the screen, after activating voice recognition.

---

### Call Commands

---

\* Check the following before using call commands:

1. Voice commands related to phone calls can be used after connecting a Bluetooth device.
2. To call a person, for example “Call <John Smith>” whose name is listed in Contacts, you must first download the Contacts list. For details on downloading contacts, see “Part 3. Bluetooth > Chapter 3. Bluetooth Phone > 3.10 Contacts”.
3. After downloading the Bluetooth contacts, it will take some time to convert the Contacts into voice data during which time you cannot make a call by name yet. The time it takes to convert voice data may vary depending on the number of Contacts downloaded on the phone.

| Command |                       | Operation                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Call                  | Displays downloaded Contacts, after this you can make a call by saying the name.                                                                                         |
| ●       | Call <Name>           | You can directly call a person by <Name> in the downloaded Contacts.                                                                                                     |
| ●       | Call <Name> on Mobile | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Mobile" in the downloaded Contacts. e.g.) Call "John Smith" on Mobile                              |
| ●       | Call <Name> at Work   | You can call a person directly <Name> to the number that is saved as "Work" in the downloaded Contacts. e.g.) Call "John Smith" at Work                                  |
| ●       | Call <Name> at Home   | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Home" in the downloaded Contacts. e.g.) Call "John Smith" at Home                                  |
| ●       | Call <Name> on Other  | You can call a person <name> directly to the number that is saved as "Other" than "Mobile, Home, or Office" in the downloaded Contacts. e.g.) Call "John Smith" on Other |
| ●       | Dial Number           | Displays a screen where you can say a phone number to dial.                                                                                                              |
| ●       | Dial <Phone #>        | You can directly say the number to call. e.g.) Dial 111 555 1234                                                                                                         |

## Navigation Commands

- \* Check the following before you use navigation commands:
1. Search for and find addresses located in the state or province your car is currently in.  
If you want to search in another state, say the name of state/province and then look it up.  
Find Address is classified by states/provinces to provide you with faster service.
  2. Some commands such as “Cancel Route” are available only when the destination is fixed.

| Command |                         | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Find Address in <State> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Finds the address in &lt;State&gt; and sets it as the destination.<br/>e.g.) Find Address in California</li><li>• To find an address, you should say “House Number → Street → City”.<br/>e.g.) 300 (Three Zero Zero) Main Street, Almond</li></ul> |
| ●       | Find Address            | Finds the address and sets it as the destination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| ●       | Find POI                | Find the points of interest. After this command, you can find the name of a location step-bystep.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| ●       | Find <Category>         | Immediately finds <Category>. For detail of <Category>, see “Find <Category>” list.<br>e.g.) Find “Banks”                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| ●       | Map                     | Moves to the current position on the navigation map                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| ●       | Previous Points         | Displays a list combining Previous Destinations, Previous Searches, and Previous Starting Points all together.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                                                                                                                |
| ●       | Previous Destinations   | Displays a list of recent destinations that you can return to by saying the number in the list.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| ●       | Previous Searches       | Displays a list of recent searches, where you can set a destination by saying the number in the list.                                                                                                                                                                                      |

| Command |                             | Operation                                                                                                                                         |
|---------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Previous Starting Points    | Displays a list of recent starting points that you can return to by saying the number in the list.                                                |
| ●       | Traffic Information         | Moves to the Traffic Information menu screen.                                                                                                     |
| ●       | Go Home                     | Set the destination to your home.<br>Your home must first be set in the Navigation system.                                                        |
| ●       | Go to Office                | Set the destination to your office/work.<br>Your office/work must first be set in the Navigation system.                                          |
| ●       | Turn Guidance On            | Turns on the voice guidance system.                                                                                                               |
| ●       | Turn Guidance Off           | Turns off the voice guidance system.                                                                                                              |
| ●       | Zoom All the Way Out        | Zooms out from the navigation map to the fullest.                                                                                                 |
| ●       | Zoom All the Way In         | Zooms in on the navigation map to the fullest.                                                                                                    |
| ●       | Cancel Route                | Cancels the route to the fixed destination and exits guidance.                                                                                    |
| ●       | Destination Information     | Tells you the remaining distance and time to your destination.                                                                                    |
| ●       | Route Options               | Restarts the route to your destination. You can then select either "Faster Time" or "Shorter Distance".                                           |
| ●       | Find Faster Time Route      | Starts a new route to your destination that will take the least amount of time.                                                                   |
| ●       | Find Shorter Distance Route | Starts a new route to your destination that will use the shortest distance.                                                                       |
| ●       | Emergency Services          | Displays a list of nearest Police Station, Hospital, Dealership, or Road Assistance.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number. |
| ●       | Police Station              | Displays a list of the nearest police stations.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                                      |
| ●       | Hospital                    | Displays a list of the nearest hospitals.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                                            |
| ●       | Dealership                  | Displays a list of the nearest car dealerships.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                                      |
| ●       | Road Assistance             | Displays a list of the nearest road assistance locations.<br>You can then set a destination by saying the list number.                            |
| ●       | Show Route                  | Displays a map overview of the entire route to your destination.                                                                                  |

## Radio Commands

| Command |                                | Operation                                                                                                                          |
|---------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Radio                          | Plays the most recent radio channels from FM, AM, and SiriusXM™.                                                                   |
| ●       | FM                             | Plays FM radio.                                                                                                                    |
| ●       | FM<br><87.5~107.9>             | Tunes to FM <Frequency> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) FM 87.5: FM eighty seven point five                                    |
| ●       | SiriusXM                       | Plays SiriusXM radio.                                                                                                              |
| ●       | SiriusXM<br>Channel<br><0~999> | Tunes to SiriusXM™ Channel <Channel Number> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) SiriusXM Channel 23: SiriusXM Channel twenty three |
| ●       | AM                             | Plays AM radio.                                                                                                                    |
| ●       | AM<br><530~1710>               | Tunes to AM <Frequency> according to what you say.<br>e.g.) AM 530: AM five thirty                                                 |
| ○       | Preset <1~18>                  | Tunes to your preset stations (1 to 18).                                                                                           |
| ○       | Channel<br><0~999>             | In SiriusXM™ Radio mode, turns on the <Channel Number> that you say.                                                               |

---

## Media Commands

---

\* Check the following before you use media commands.

1. If no media is connected or if no playable files exist at the time when you use these commands, a voice message will tell you that this is not available.
2. If you say the name of the media that is currently playing again, then that media will continue playing.  
e.g.) Saying “USB” while USB content is playing.

| Command |                 | Operation                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Music           | Continues the last media you played.                                                                                                                        |
| ●       | CD              | CD Plays the content of the CD currently inserted.                                                                                                          |
| ●       | iPod            | Plays the iPod currently connected. This will work the same when an iPhone is connected. If a USB is connected, then it will be played instead of the iPod. |
| ●       | USB             | Plays the music on the USB currently connected. If an iPod is connected, then the iPod will be played instead of the USB.                                   |
| ●       | Bluetooth Audio | Plays the music on the Bluetooth phone currently connected. This may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth connection status.                         |
| ●       | AUX             | Plays external devices that are currently connected.                                                                                                        |
| ●       | My Music        | Plays My Music files stored in the system.                                                                                                                  |

### 1. Audio CD Command

| Command |                 | Operation                                                                                                        |
|---------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ○       | Play            | Plays a paused track.<br>Maintains the current settings during playback.                                         |
| ○       | Pause           | Pauses a track that is currently playing.<br>Maintains current settings while paused during playback.            |
| ○       | Track<br><1~99> | Plays a desired track number.                                                                                    |
| ○       | Shuffle         | Plays tracks or files randomly.<br>Maintains current settings during shuffled playback.                          |
| ○       | Shuffle Off     | Cancels Shuffle and plays tracks sequentially.<br>Maintains current settings during sequential playback.         |
| ○       | Repeat          | Plays the current track repeatedly.<br>Maintains the current settings during repeat playback.                    |
| ○       | Repeat Off      | Cancels Repeat and plays multiple tracks or files.<br>Maintains current settings during multiple track playback. |

## 2. MP3 CD/USB Music/iPod/My Music Command

| Command               |             | Operation                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> | Play        | Plays a selected file.<br>Maintains the current settings during playback.                                        |
| <input type="radio"/> | Pause       | Pauses a file that is playing.<br>Maintains current settings while paused during playback.                       |
| <input type="radio"/> | Shuffle     | Plays tracks or files randomly.<br>Maintains current settings during shuffled playback.                          |
| <input type="radio"/> | Shuffle Off | Cancels Shuffle and plays tracks sequentially.<br>Maintains current settings during sequential playback.         |
| <input type="radio"/> | Repeat      | Plays the current track or file repeatedly.<br>Maintains the current settings during repeat playback.            |
| <input type="radio"/> | Repeat Off  | Cancels Repeat and plays multiple tracks or files.<br>Maintains current settings during multiple track playback. |

## 3. Bluetooth audio/AUX command

For Bluetooth audio and external devices (AUX), local commands are unavailable, including Play, Pause, Repeat and Shuffle.

## Other Commands List (Commands used in List/Help)

| Command |                             | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ●       | Help                        | Moves to the voice recognition help screen.<br>All available commands can then be identified and used.                                                                                          |
| ○       | Line 1~5<br>(One~Five)      | When you cannot select a certain name, such as in Call History, you can select it using numbers.<br>Simple numbers can be recognized, such as “One” or “Two”.                                   |
| ○       | Yes/No                      | When voice recognition is activated, this command is used when an answer is requested for a confirmation question.                                                                              |
| ○       | Previous Page/<br>Next Page | When five or more searched items are listed, you can move to the previous or next page using a voice command.                                                                                   |
| ○       | Manual Input                | When Dial or POI Name search results are displayed, this command is used to search manually, rather than to search with a voice command.<br>Voice recognition stops after this command is used. |
| ○       | Go Back                     | Moves to the previous screen.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| ●       | Exit                        | Ends the voice recognition.                                                                                                                                                                     |

## Siri Eyes Free

---

### How to start Siri

---

If you want to use Siri, you have to connect your iOS device to the Multimedia system through Bluetooth.

(Please check whether your iOS device supports Siri and turning Siri On)

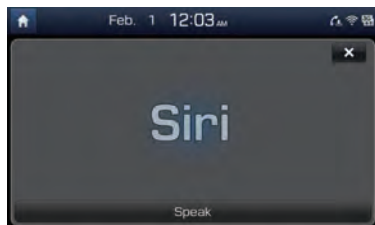
Then you can use Siri while pressing and holding  key on the steering wheel.

---

### How to use Siri

---

When you access the Siri screen while pressing and holding  key on the steering wheel, you can select  button and then you can speak what you want. Note that the Multimedia system only supports “Phone” related functions. Other functions will be performed in your iOS device. If you press voice key quickly, Siri would re-start. If you hold down voice key, Siri would be terminated and the screen would go back to the previous screen. Eyes-Free mode would be activated automatically while you are driving. When shifting gears into P or putting the Parking brake on, Eyes-Free mode would be deactivated automatically.



---

### Information

---

- Functions and feedbacks from voice commands via Siri are executed in the iOS device. If the iOS version is changed, the functions and response may be different according to the iOS device and the latest version.
-

---

## About Pairing Mobile Phones

---

**Q** I cannot pair my mobile phone, what is the cause?

**A** Check to see that the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® function. Verify if Bluetooth on the cell phone is set to OFF. If so, set it to ON. If the cell phone still can't be registered, try again after turning Bluetooth off and on, or delete the device registration on the AVN and cell phone and then register the cell phone again.

**Q** What is the difference between pairing a mobile phone and connecting a mobile phone?

**A** Pairing occurs through authenticating the head unit and mobile phone. Mobile phones paired to the head unit can be connected and disconnected until the paired mobile phone is deleted from the system. Bluetooth® Handsfree features, such as making/answering calls or managing Contacts, are supported only in mobile phones connected with the head unit.

**Q** What is a Passkey?

**A** A passkey is the password used to authenticate the connection between the head unit and mobile phone. The passkey only needs to be entered once when pairing the mobile phone for the first time.

The initial passkey is 0000. You can change it with

**SETUP**



**Bluetooth**



**Bluetooth System Info**



**Passkey**

menu options.

---

## About Making/Answering Phone Calls

---

**Q** How can I answer a call?

**A** When there is an incoming call, a notification pop-up will become displayed.

To answer the incoming call, select the  button on the screen or the  key on the steering remote controller.

To reject the call, select the  button on the screen or press the  key on the steering remote controller.

**Q** What should I do if I am talking on the Handsfree but want to switch the call to the mobile phone?

**A** While are a call, press and hold (over 0.8 seconds) the  key on the steering remote controller or select the  button at the bottom of the Phone screen to switch the call to your mobile phone.

---

## About *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Wireless Technology/ Head Unit Use Environment

---

**Q** What is the range of my wireless connection?

**A** The wireless connection can be used within 15 yards.

**Q** How many mobile phones can be paired?

**A** It is possible to pair up to five mobile phones.

**Q** Why is call quality sometimes poor?

**A** Check the reception sensitivity of the mobile phone when call quality becomes worsened. The call quality may deteriorate when the signal strength is low. Call quality may also worsen if metal objects, such as beverage cans, are placed near the mobile phone. Check to see if there are metal objects in the vicinity of the mobile phone. The call sound and quality may differ depending on the type of mobile phone.

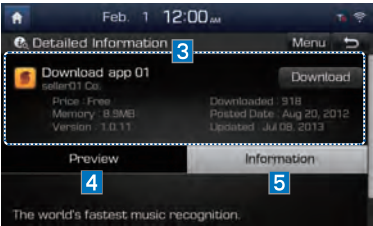
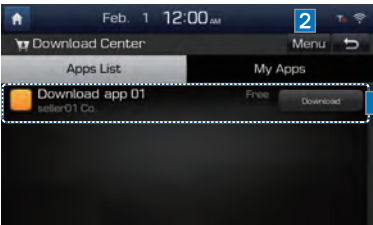
# Download Center

With Download Center, you can install paid/free applications or check for related information. Only BlueLink center, verified applications can be installed.

You can use Download Center after agreeing to the terms of service and use on the screen. (Only 1 time for initial launch)

## App List

Select **All Menus** or **My Menu** from Home screen ▶ **Blue Link Apps** ▶ and then select **Download Center**.



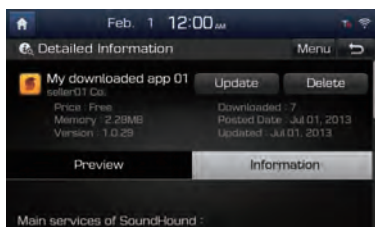
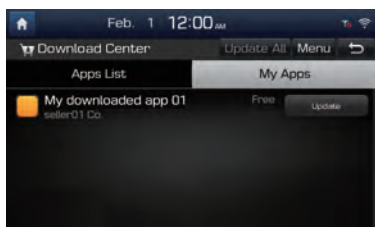
| Name                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Application Download and Run buttons | Button state changes according to the application state.                                                                                                        |
| <b>Download</b>                               | Downloads free applications.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Purchase</b>                               | Downloads paid applications.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Re-download</b>                            | Downloads deleted applications after previously installing them.                                                                                                |
| <b>Retry</b>                                  | Downloads the applications that failed to download due to network or system errors.                                                                             |
| <b>Run</b>                                    | Runs installed applications.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Cancel</b>                                 | Cancels any downloads and updates.                                                                                                                              |
| <b>2</b> Menu                                 | Updates and refreshes the menu.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Update</b>                                 | After installation, it shows applications requiring updates. The update screen shows the <b>Update All</b> button to update all applications that need updates. |
| <b>Refresh</b>                                | Refreshes the app list status.                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>3</b> Detailed Information                 | When the application list area is pressed, it moves to the Detailed Information screen.                                                                         |
| <b>4</b> Preview                              | Displays application images.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>5</b> Information                          | Displays application information.                                                                                                                               |

---

## My Apps

---

Select **All Menus** or **My Menu** from Home screen ► **Blue Link Apps** ► followed by **Download Center** and then **My Apps** .



The **My Apps** menu displays the **Re-download**, **Update**, **Run** options for downloaded applications. All functions of **My Apps** are the same as those in the app list.

---

### **i** Information

---

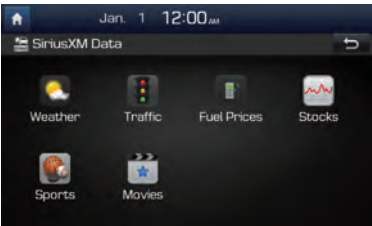
- You can update applications already running only after closing them.
  - Details on downloaded apps can be checked within the Download Center.
  - Apps available for download may vary depending on the environment.
-

## About SiriusXM™ Data Service

The SiriusXM™ Data Service is a paid membership Satellite radio service which provides users with traffic, stock, sports, and weather information. However, weather information is not supported for vehicles purchased in Canada.

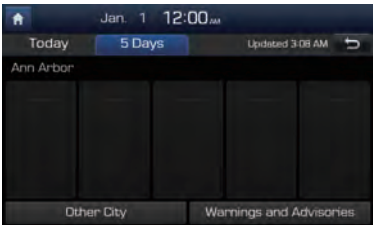
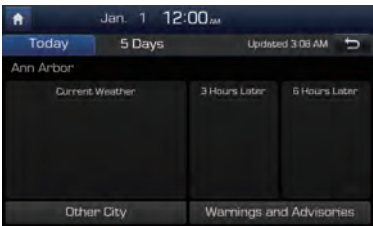
## Accessing SiriusXM™ Data

Press the “SiriusXM Data” icon after selecting **All Menus** or the **INFO** hard-key to enter the SiriusXM™ Data mode.



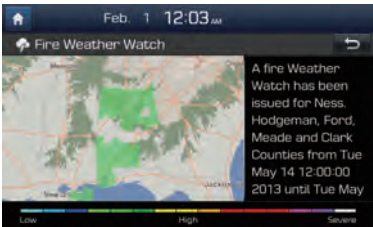
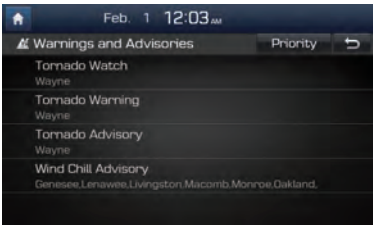
## Weather Forecast

This service provides current weather information and weather forecasts for the next five days in your region. To change the region, select the **Other City** button and select the desired region.



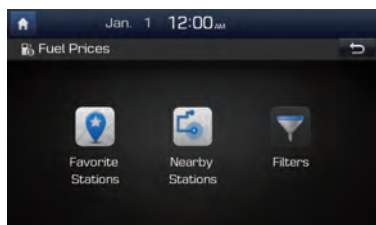
## Warnings and Advisories

This service provides weather warnings and advisories, such as tornado, storm, Floodflood, etc. as symbols on the Navigation map.



## SiriusXM™ Fuel Price Information

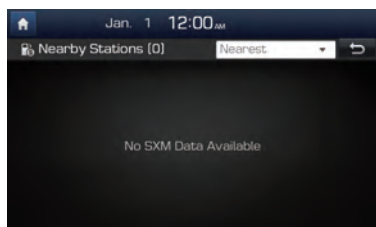
At the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Fuel Prices” icon to enter the Fuel Prices Information mode.



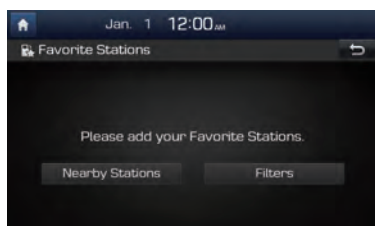
### Search for Nearby Stations, and Register Key Locations as Favorite Stations.

Search for nearby stations with the “Nearby Stations” menu.

It shows station locations, starting from the nearest one, and select “Nearest” menu on the top right side to further sort them by price or brand name.

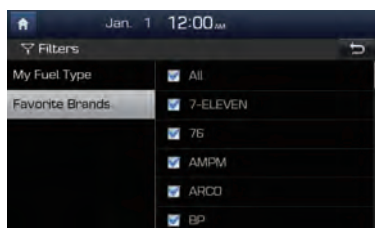
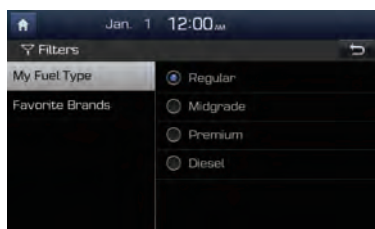


Select the  button to the right of the list to register key locations as a Favorite Station so that you can go there again with the “Favorite Stations” menu. Select the list to move to navigation destination select screen to receive guidance.



### My Fuel Type Settings

With the “Filters” menu, you can select fuel types and favorite brands. When searching for Nearby Stations, the results will reflect selected fuel types and brand information.



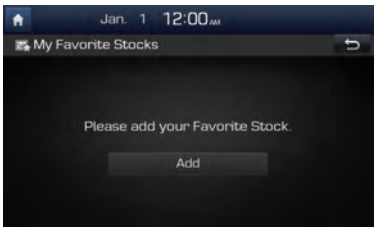
## SiriusXM™ Stock Information

In the “SiriusXM Data” screen, press the “Stocks” icon to enter the Stocks mode.

Stocks is a feature that shows the current value and change of stocks. For symbols which you are interested in, press the icon to save the symbol as a part of Saved symbols can be viewed from the My Favorites button on the Stock Main screen.

### My Favorites

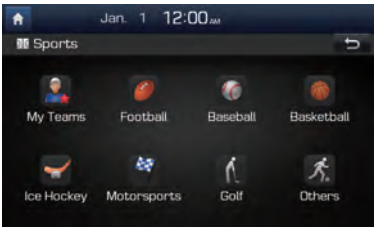
My Favorites shows a list of stocks added by the user. When entering the Stocks menu for the first time, a screen is displayed for you to add your favorite stock information. Select the **Add** button to move to the stock search screen.



## SiriusXM™ Sports Information

Press the “Sports” icon to enter the Sports mode.

This service provides real-time updated information on scores and schedules for major sports, such as NFL, NBA, NCAA football, NCAA basketball, NHL, MLB, NASCAR and more.

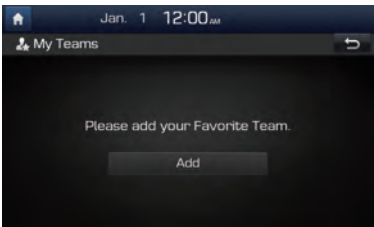


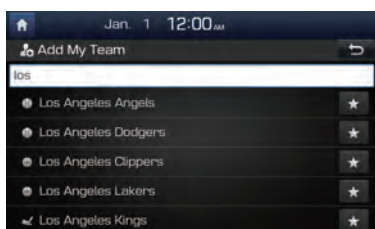
### My Teams

You can save teams which you are interested in as part of My teams to easily view related scores and schedules.

Select the My Teams menu and then Select the **Add** button to search for and register your favorite teams.

Search for your favorite teams and Select the **★** button on the right to add it to the “My Teams” list.

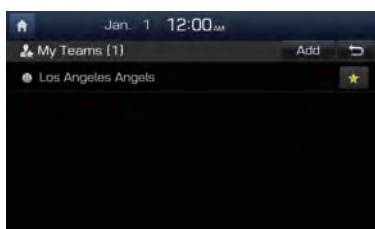




You can always check the list of teams that you added in the “My Teams” menu. Select the  button on the right side of the team name to delete the team from “My Teams” or select the **Add** button to add other teams.

| Name             | Score    | Ranking |
|------------------|----------|---------|
| Cristie Kerr     | -12 (0)  | 1       |
| Suzann Pettersen | -12 (0)  | 2       |
| Arjo Jutanugarn  | -10 (66) | T3      |
| Ilhee Lee        | -10 (67) | T3      |
| Angela Stanford  | -9 (69)  | T5      |

| * São Paulo Street Circuit |             |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| - Sun, May 5               | 11:40 AM ET |
| - 75 Laps                  |             |
| - James Hinchcliff         |             |



Press the team name to check daily results and recent schedules for that team.

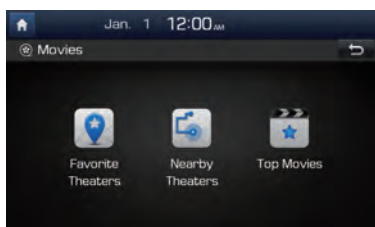
| NFL          |                  |    |       |
|--------------|------------------|----|-------|
| Dec 16, 2013 |                  |    |       |
| Score        | Baltimore Ravens | 18 |       |
| Schedule     | Detroit Lions    | 16 | Final |

| NFL          |                                         |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Dec 22, 2013 |                                         |
| Score        | Denver Broncos @ Houston Texans         |
| Schedule     | Sun, Dec 22 1:00 PM ET                  |
|              | Indianapolis Colts @ Kansas City Chiefs |
|              | Sun, Dec 22 1:00 PM ET                  |
|              | Minnesota Vikings @ Cincinnati Bengals  |
|              | Sun, Dec 22 1:00 PM ET                  |

## SiriusXM™ Movie Information

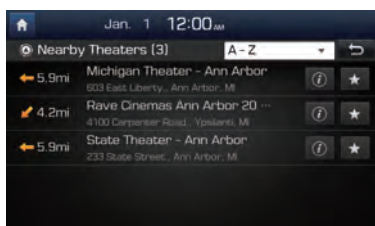
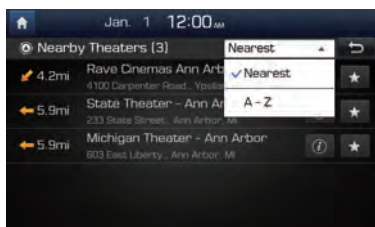
Press the “Movies” icon to enter the Movie mode.

You can check recent movies and nearby theaters, and also register your favorite theater locations.

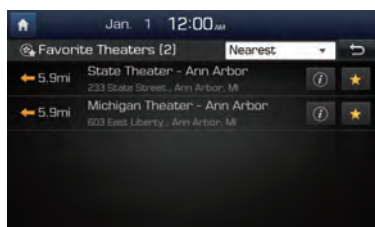
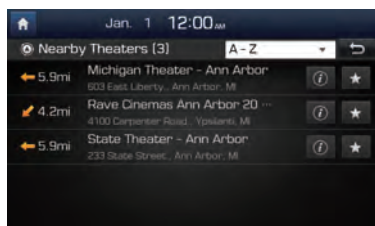


### Search for Nearby Theaters, and Register Any Key Locations as Favorite Theaters.

In the “Nearby Theaters” menu, you can search for any nearby theaters. It shows theaters, starting from the nearest one, and selecting the “Nearest” menu at the top right side will sort them by name.



Select the  button to the right of the list to register your favorite theater so that you can always check it again using the “Favorite Theaters” menu and selecting the  button to view the current movie information for that theater.



Select from the list to move to the select navigation destination screen and receive directions.

In the “Top Movies” menu, you can check for any movies that are currently popular. Select  button to the right of a movie title to view the plot summary and any other detailed information.



Basic Features

Operating Navigation Screen

Basic features on the map screen.



|    | Name | Description                                                    |
|----|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  |      | Touch to scroll the map.                                       |
| 10 |      | Quick and easy selection of a destination from the map screen. |
| 11 |      | Set a waypoint to the current route.                           |
| 12 |      | Save frequently used address to address book.                  |
| 13 |      | Find a POI(Point Of Interest) around the current position.     |
| 14 |      | View the vehicle's current position on the map screen.         |

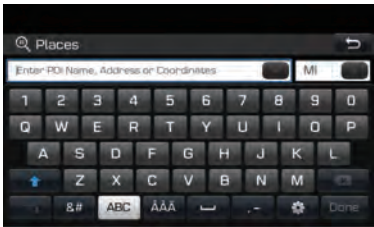
|   | Name | Description                                                 |
|---|------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |      | Go to the Place menu.                                       |
| 2 |      | Move to the Home Screen                                     |
| 3 |      | Change the map view mode.                                   |
| 4 |      | Adjusts the volume.                                         |
| 5 |      | Zoom in the map.                                            |
| 6 |      | Set the zoom level automatically according to the guidance. |
| 7 |      | Zoom out the map.                                           |
| 8 |      | Quick and easy selection of a destination and options.      |

## Places



You can use this menu when the gear is in “Parking” mode and there is no destination set.

Press the Search screen to move to “Places”.



Please refer to “Places” in “Destination Search” for more details.

## Changing Map View

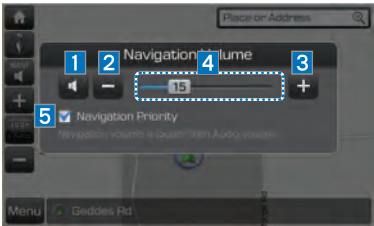


Touch the compass arrow icon to toggle between a map oriented to the North, oriented parallel to the vehicle’s heading and 3D View.

## Navigation Volume



Select the  button to adjust the navigation volume.



| Name | Description                                                  |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Set the volume to mute.                                      |
| 2    | Turn the volume down                                         |
| 3    | Turn the volume up                                           |
| 4    | Slide to set the volume                                      |
| 5    | Sets the volume of voice guidance louder than that of audio. |

## Zoom In/Zoom Out

Zoom the map view screen in and out.



Select **+** or **-** to set the zoom level

## Map Scale

Sets the zoom level automatically according to the type of road.



| Name                                                                                          | Description                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  Scale Fix  | Manually adjust the map scale.                                    |
|  Auto Scale | Change the map scale automatically depending on the type of road. |

## Menu

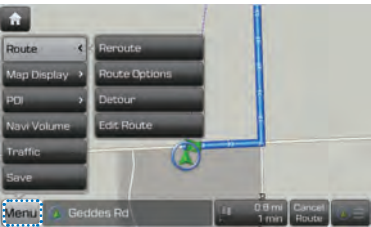
### Route

Select the **Menu** button on the bottom left of the screen ► Select the **Route** button



Select the **Route** button to set **Reroute** , **Route Option** , **Detour** or **Edit Route** .

### Reroute



The **Reroute** button is active only when there is an active route. You can search a route again.

## Route Option

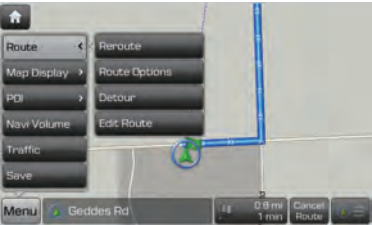


You can select an option from Route, Traffic Information, Freeway, Toll Roads, Ferry, HOV/Carpool Lanes, Electronic Toll or Private/Gated Roads.

Select the **Save** button to save your selection.

If there is a route already saved, another route will be searched.

## Detour

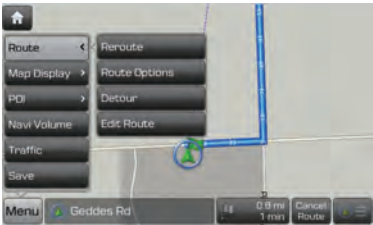


The **Detour** button is active only when there is an active route.

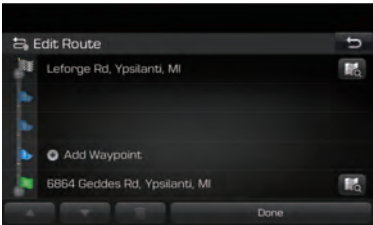


Selected distance is detoured from the current location.

## Edit Route



Select the **Edit Route** button to change the route. Refer to the **Route** ► **Edit Route** section in the manual for more information.



## Map Display

Displays the direction of the map.

Press   or .



| Name | Description                                                                                |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Displays always has north at the top of screen.                                            |
| 2    | Displays always shows the vehicle's direction as proceeding towards the top of the screen. |
| 3    | Shows the map in 3 dimentionts.                                                            |
| 4    | Shows or hides buildings on the map.                                                       |

## Nearby POIs

Display nearby POIs on the map.

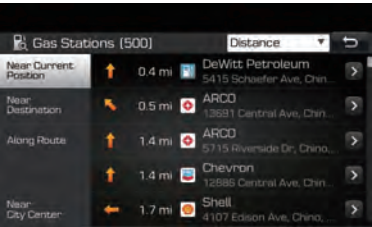
### View Nearby POIs

Select the **Menu** on the bottom of the left screen ► Select the **POI** button.

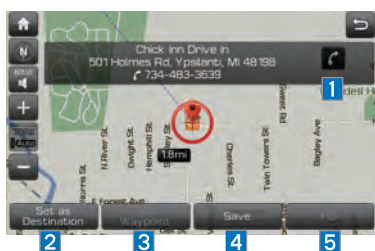


Select the **On** , **Off** button to set whether to show nearby POIs or not. When categories are selected, they will appear on the map. (ex. Gas station)

The lists of nearby gas station are displayed



The list can be sorted to display in order of distance or name.



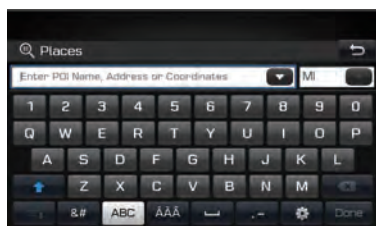
| Name | Description                                                               |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Call to the selected location (Phone needs to be connected via Bluetooth) |
| 2    | Set the place as a destination.                                           |
| 3    | Set the location as a waypoint.                                           |
| 4    | Save the location                                                         |
| 5    | Search nearby POIs.                                                       |

## Search

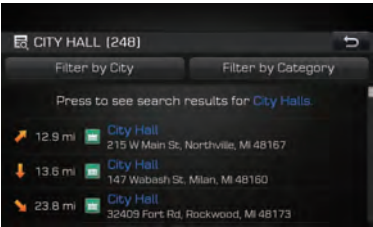
### Places

You can enter POI Name, Address, or Coordinates that you wish to search by.

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Place or Address** search bar.



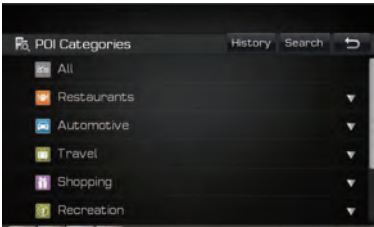
Enter the POI Name, Address and Coordinates of the location you want in the input window above, and select the **Done** button.



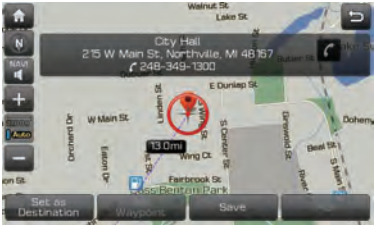
If you select a location from the search result list, it will bring you to the point.



If you select the **Filter by City** button on the search result screen, it will bring you to the City search screen where you can filter the search results by city names.



If you select the **Filter by Category** button from the search result screen, it will bring you to the POI Categories screen where you can filter the search results by POI Categories.



Once the destination has been identified either by POI name, address, or coordinates, the map screen will be displayed. From this screen you can set the destination or add a waypoint, or add the displayed destination to your address book.

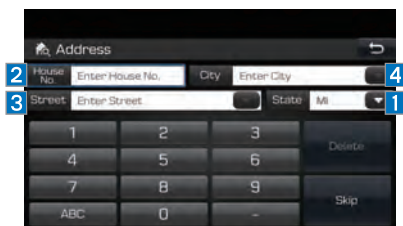
## Address

Set destination by address search.

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Address** icon.

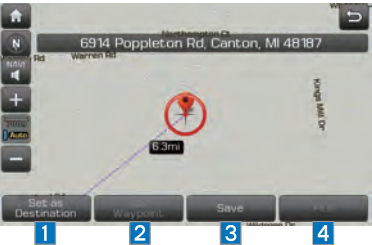


## How to Search Address



| Name | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select state to search.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 2    | Enter house number. If you don't know the house number, select <b>Skip</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 3    | Enter the street name. Entering exact street name is required. The letters on the keyboard are automatically enabled and disabled based on the search result, and words are automatically completed. When same street names are available in other cities, the lists of city are displayed. |
| 4    | Select a city before entering the street name. Addresses are searched only from the selected city.                                                                                                                                                                                          |

Search criteria can be entered in any order. Example: [State] then [City] then [Street] then [House No.]



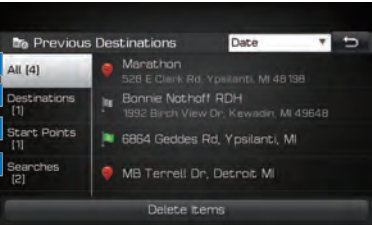
Enter the address to check the location information on the map.

| Name | Description                        |
|------|------------------------------------|
| 1    | Set the location as a destination. |
| 2    | Set the location as a waypoint.    |
| 3    | Save the location.                 |
| 4    | Search nearby POIs.                |

## Previous Destinations

Select from previously inputted addresses and POI's.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **Previous Destinations** icon.



Arrange by all, latest destinations, latest searched places and latest departing places.

Arrange in order of date and name.

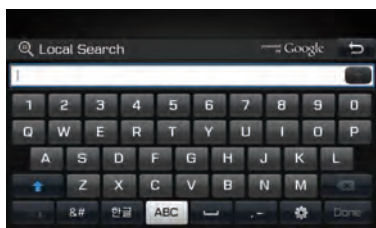
| Name | Description                                                                                                                            |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Display all destinations, departing places, and searched places.                                                                       |
| 2    | Display previous destination places for route guidance.                                                                                |
| 3    | Display previous departing places for route guidance.                                                                                  |
| 4    | Display previously searched places for route guidance.<br><b>i</b> But, not displayed when the searched places are set as destination. |

## Local Search

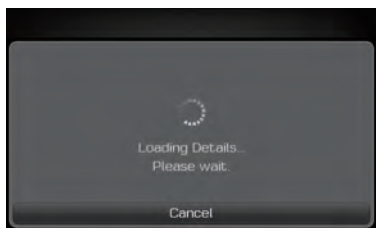
Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Local Search** icon.



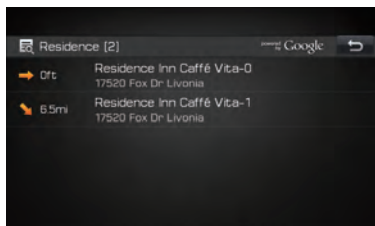
Runs Google Local Search.



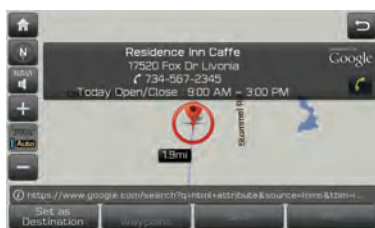
Enter the desired keywords and select the **Done** button.



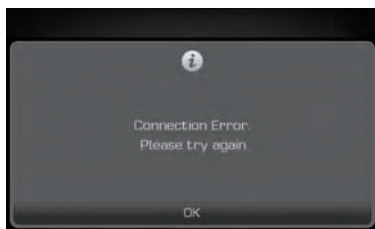
Searching is in progress.



If search successes, search results are displayed. Select one of the search result.



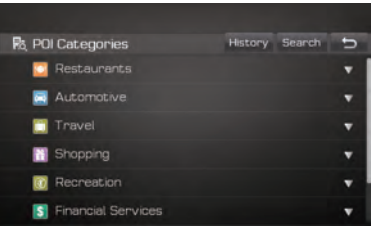
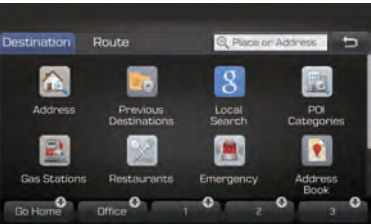
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.



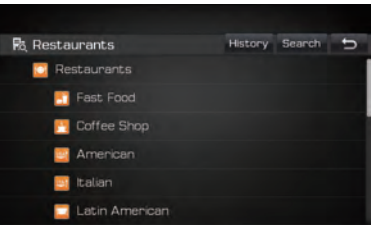
If failed, the connection error message is displayed as above. Please try again.

## POI Categories

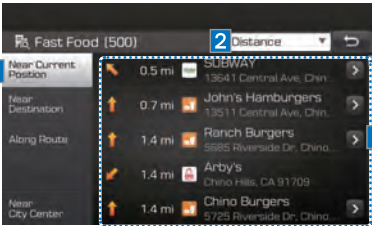
Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **POI Categories** icon.



Select the desired item.



Select the desired item in the sub-categories.

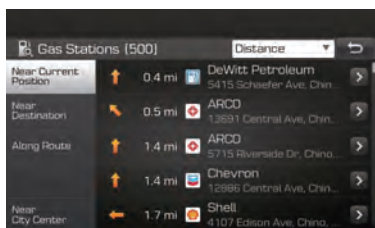
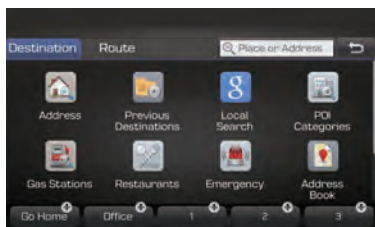


| Name | Description                                                                                                      |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select the desired destination among the searched items and add it as a way point.                               |
| 2    | Arrange in order of Distance and Name.                                                                           |
| 3    | Arrange in order of Near Current Position, Near Destination, Along Route, Near Scroll Mark and Near City Center. |

## Gas Stations

Search for gas stations.

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Gas Stations** icon.

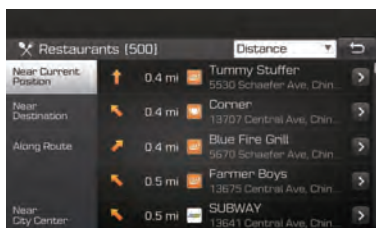


Select the desired destination among the searched items.

## Restaurants

Search restaurants.

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Restaurants** icon.

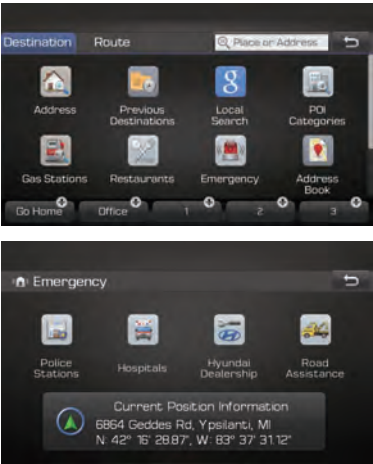


Select the desired destination among the searched items.

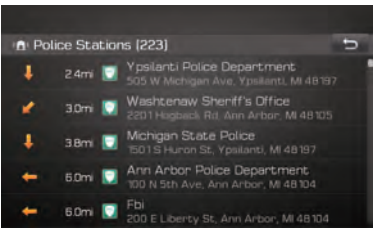
## Emergency

Search emergency facilities.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **Emergency** icon.



Check the current location information and select the desired item in the sub-menu(ex. Police Station).



Select the desired destination among the searched items.

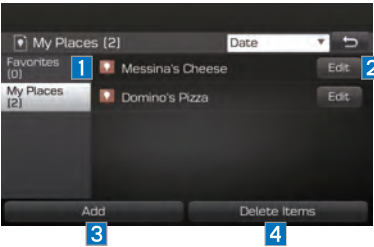
## Address Book

Search the destination with the address book.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Destination** tab. ▶ Select the **Address book** icon.



Select the desired group. If you save addresses in the Favorite Places folder, destinations can be easily set by pressing the icons such as **Go Home** and **Office** at the bottom of the Destination menu.



| Name | Description                                             |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Select the desired destination from the searched items. |
| 2    | Edit the destination.                                   |
| 3    | Register a new destination.                             |
| 4    | Delete the desired item.                                |

## Phone Number

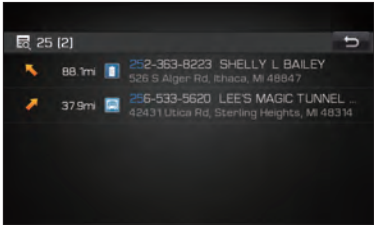
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Flick the screen in up direction to scroll to the bottom row of icons in the **Destination** tab. ► Select the **Phone Number** to search POI by phone number.



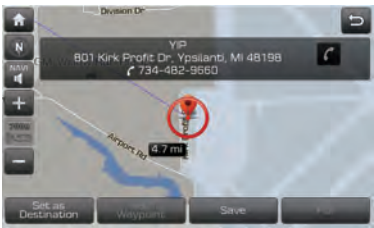
Search destination by phone number.



Type phone number to search. To search for a list of numbers based on a partial phone number entry, enter a few numbers and select **Done** to narrow the search results.



Select the desired destination among the searched items.

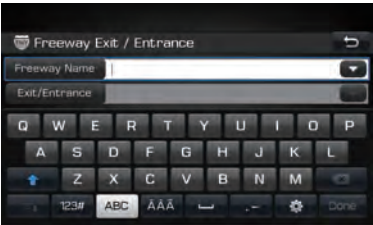


Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

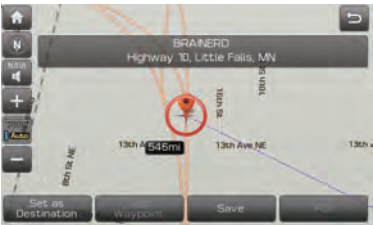
# Navigation

## Freeway Exit/Entrance

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Freeway Exit/Entrance** to search by freeway exit/entrance.



Type freeway name and exit/entrance.



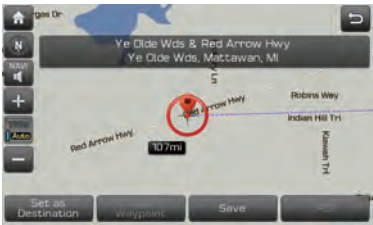
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Intersection

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Intersection** to search by intersection.



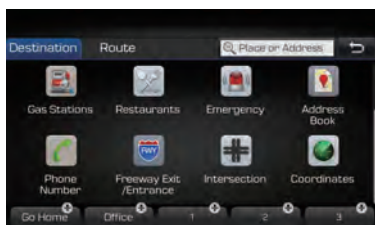
Type 1st Street name, the State, 2nd Street name.



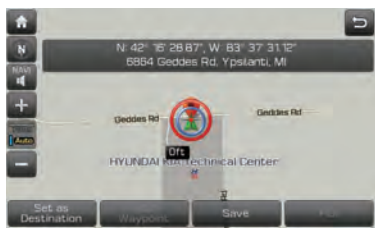
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Coordinates

Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Coordinates** to search by coordinates.



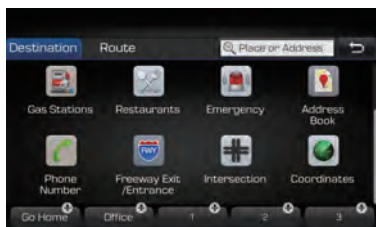
There are two ways to search by coordinates (D.M.S or Decimal degrees). After typing coordinates, select the **Done** button to search.



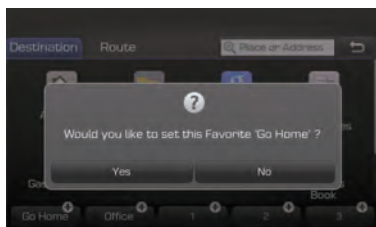
Select the **Set as Destination** button to start guidance.

## Favorite places

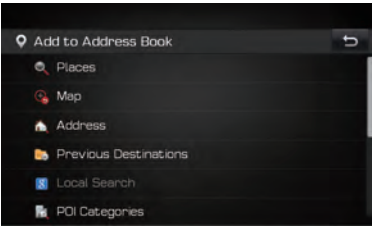
Set the route using your favorite places. Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the **Destination** tab. ► Select from favorite places.



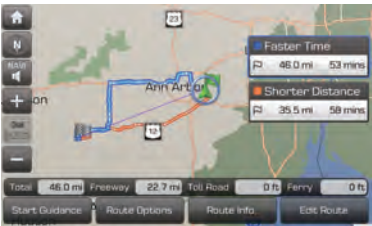
On the button where locations are not registered, the **+** icon is displayed. When a location is registered, the **+** button disappears and the buttons 1 to 3 are displayed as your favorite places.



Select the **Go Home** button then select the **Yes** button to set the Favorite 'Go Home'.



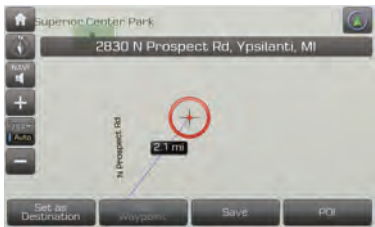
Register **Go Home** in various searching methods. Office, Special 1, Special 2, and Special 3 can also be set as a Favorite using the same steps.



Pressing any of the Favorite Place buttons will start the route guidance to the saved Favorite address.

## Route Setting

The route can be set after searching for a destination.



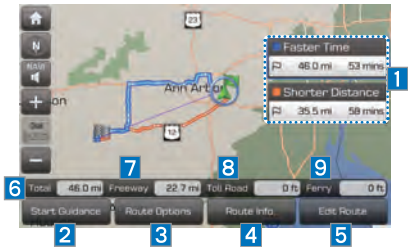
While the destination is set, the buttons **Set as Destination** and **Add Waypoint** appear. Select the desired button to change a destination or add a waypoint.

## Destination Setting



After searching the destination, select the **Set as Destination** button to set the location as a destination.

## All Routes



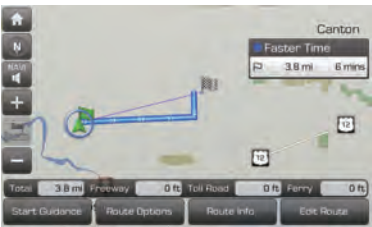
When the alternative routes option is enabled in navigation setting, two routing options are displayed based on faster time and shorter distance.

- **Faster Time:** Select time-optimized route, being the fastest roads.
- **Shorter Distance:** Select short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be calculated.

| Name | Description                                                    |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Display total distance, travel time. Select the desired route. |
| 2    | Start the guidance with the route.                             |
| 3    | Change the route option.                                       |
| 4    | You can check route information.                               |
| 5    | Edit the route.                                                |
| 6    | Display total distance of the route.                           |
| 7    | Display length of freeway on the route.                        |
| 8    | Display length of toll road on the route.                      |
| 9    | Display length of Ferry route on the route.                    |

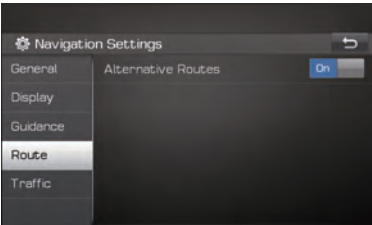
# Navigation

The route will be calculated using the option “Faster Time” by default.



Alternative routes can be suggested if necessary, **SETUP** key. ▶

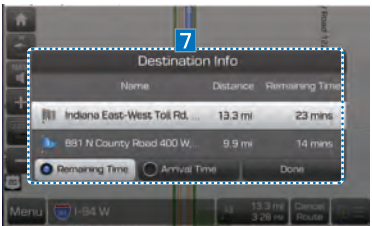
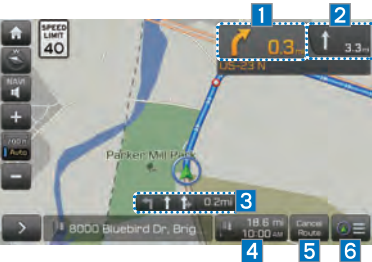
**Navigation** icon ▶ **Route** ▶ **Alternative: On**



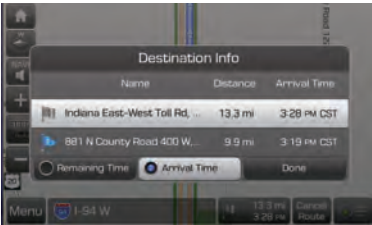
## Route Guidance

Show route guidance detailed information.

### Route Guidance Screen



**Remaining time** : Display the time remaining by destination.



**Arrival Time** : Display the estimated time of arrival.

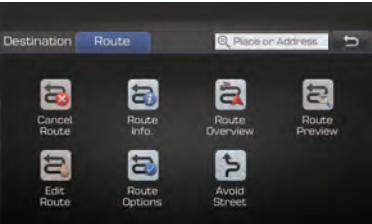
| Name     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | Displays the distance and direction to the first turn point.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>2</b> | Displays the distance and direction to the second turn point.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>3</b> | Displays the lane information at the current location. Display the recommended direction in white, travelable direction in white, and the non-travelable direction in grey.                                                                                     |
| <b>4</b> | Displays the distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival. Press the button to check the detailed information. If no waypoint is set, you will see the remaining distance or estimated time of arrival in turn each time you click the button. |
| <b>5</b> | Cancel the route.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>6</b> | Change to preliminary guidance, TBT guidance, and zoom-on guidance screens.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>7</b> | Displays the destination information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

# Route

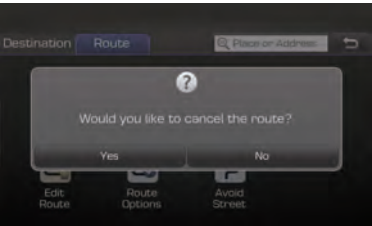
## Canceling Route

Cancel the route.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Route** tab. ▶ Select the **Cancel Route** icon.



Select the **Cancel Route** icon.



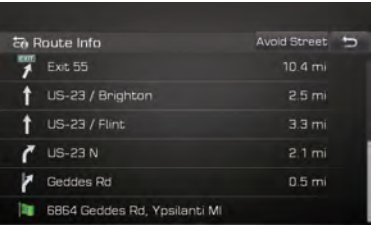
Select the **Yes** button to cancel the route.

## Display Route Information

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Route** tab. ▶ Select the **Route Info** icon.



Select the **Route Info** icon.



Check the information on the map.  
Select the desired item to see the map information.

## Avoiding road

Click the **Avoid Street** button to avoid the street or road.

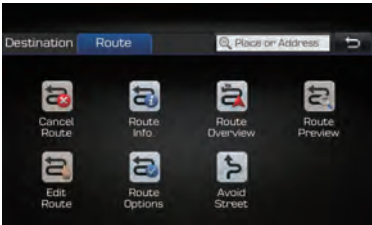


Check the desired item and select the **Done** button to finish.

## Route Overview

Check the information on route including the distance, estimated time, toll fees, etc.

Press the **NAVI** key. ▶ Select the **Route** tab. ▶ Select the **Route Overview** icon.



Select the **Route Overview** icon.



| Name | Description                      |
|------|----------------------------------|
| 1    | Change the search option.        |
| 2    | You can check route information. |
| 3    | Edit the current route.          |

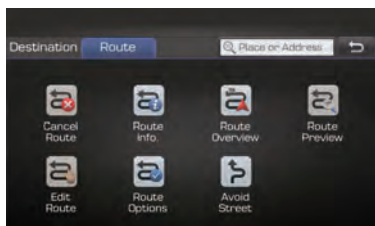
## Route Preview

Check the detailed turn-by-turn list.

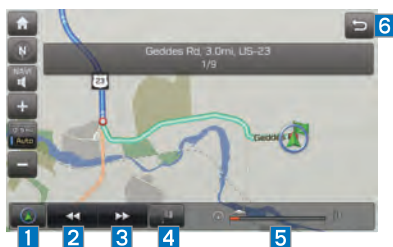
Press the **NAVI** key. ► Select the

**Route** tab. ► Select the **Route Preview**

icon.



Select the **Route Preview** icon.



| Name | Description                                |
|------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Move to the departure location.            |
| 2    | Move to the previous maneuver.             |
| 3    | Move to the next maneuver.                 |
| 4    | Move to the destination location.          |
| 5    | Touch bar to move to the specific position |
| 6    | Close the route preview.                   |

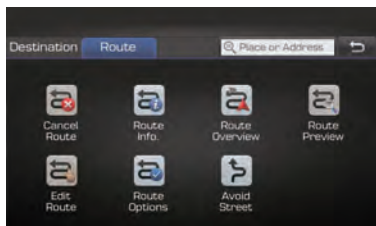
## Editing Route

Edit the current route.

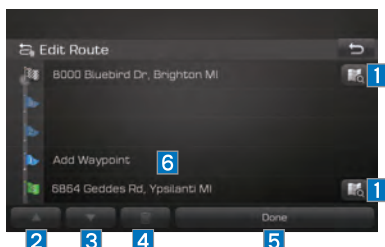
Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the

**Route** tab. ► Select the **Edit Route**

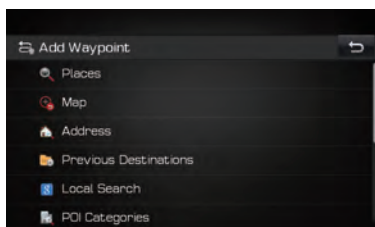
icon.



Select the **Edit Route** icon.



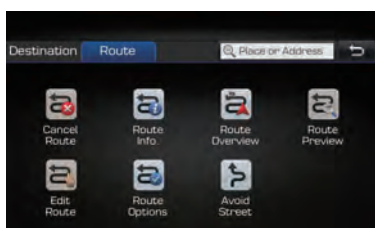
| Name | Description                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Display the selected point on the map screen. |
| 2    | Move the selected item up.                    |
| 3    | Move the selected item down.                  |
| 4    | Delete the selected item.                     |
| 5    | Press the button to finish editing.           |
| 6    | Press the button to add an waypoint.          |



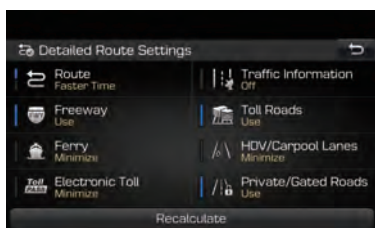
Add a waypoint through various searching methods.

## Route Options

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Route Options** icon.



Select the **Route Options** icon.

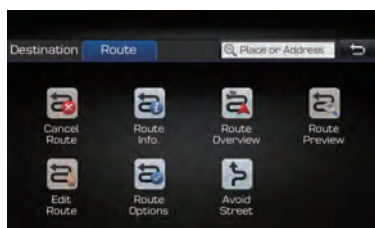


Determine the route options to guide the route.

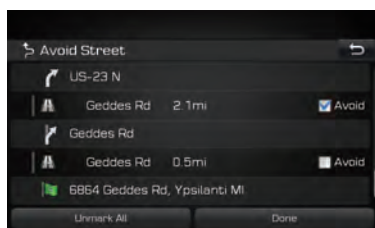
## Avoid Street

Search new route by avoiding the selected street(s).

Press the **NAVI** key ► Select the **Route** tab. ► Select the **Avoid Street** icon.



Select the **Avoid Street** icon.

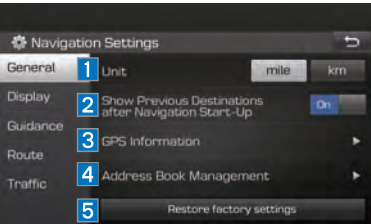


Select the **Done** button to plan new route after selecting the street(s) that you want to avoid.

# Navigation Settings

## General

Change general settings.



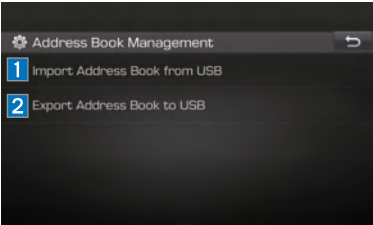
| Name | Description                                                                                              |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Change the unit of mile , km .                                                                           |
| 2    | Select the On , Off button to change the previous destination view setting when starting the navigation. |
| 3    | Check the GPS information.                                                                               |
| 4    | Import or export your Address Book using a USB.                                                          |
| 5    | Select the Restore factory settings button to initialize.                                                |



Select the **GPS Information** to display the detail GPS satellites information

| Name | Description                                      |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Active when current position is being calculated |
| 2    | Display current speed of the vehicle             |
| 3    | Display current position of the vehicle          |
| 4    | Display current elevation of the vehicle         |
| 5    | Display time                                     |
| 6    | Display date                                     |

## Address Book Management



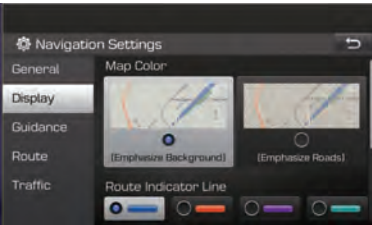
In navigation screen, select **Address Book Management**. Press the desired category.

| Name | Description                                                                                                          |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | The latest data of Address Book which have been exported to a USB device will be imported to your navigation device. |
| 2    | Export the Address Book on your navigation device to a USB device.                                                   |

-  **WARNING**
- The amount of data available for importing to a USB device is limited based on the number of address book items supported by the navigation system.
  - If the data stored on the USB device uses different coordinates than those used by the current system, the importing location may change.
  - Please make sure that the address book have been successfully imported before use.
  - Only USB devices formatted in FAT16/32 are supported.
  - Certain USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.

## Display

Change the display map settings.



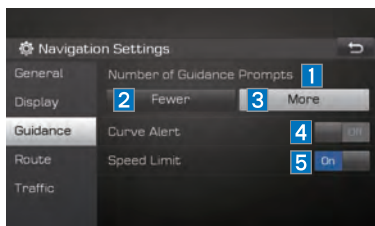
Change the map colors and the route guidance line colors.



Change the vehicle symbol.

## Guidance

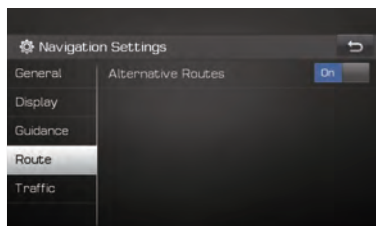
Change the guidance setting.



| Name | Description                                                               |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Set the frequency of guidance.                                            |
| 2    | Route guidance is given less frequently.                                  |
| 3    | Guidance will be provided frequently.                                     |
| 4    | Change whether to turn Curve Alert <b>On</b> and <b>Off</b> .             |
| 5    | Change whether to show speed limit by pressing <b>On</b> and <b>Off</b> . |

## Route

Change the route setting.



Select the **On** or **Off** button to change the **Alternative Routes** setting.

- Alternative on: Alternative routes will be suggested (depending on the route preference between “Faster time” and “Shorter Distance”).



### NOTICE

- Alternative routes can be shown only while the vehicle is not moving.

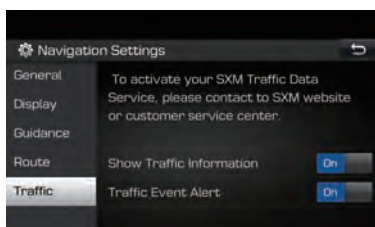
- Alternative off: No alternative routes will be suggested. Guidance will start right after calculating with the route preference (Faster time or Shorter distance)

---

## Traffic

---

Change the traffic information setting.



Select the **On** or **Off** button to change the settings.

- **Show Traffic Information On/Off:** Select whether to display traffic information or not.
- **Traffic Event Pop-up Freeway On/Off:** Select whether to display Pop-up message for traffic information on freeway.
- **Traffic Event Alert :** You can turn traffic event pop-ups on/off.



